



Zechariah

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	12
Introduction to Zechariah	12
Zechariah 1 General Notes	23
Zechariah 1:1-3	24
Zechariah 1:4-6	26
Zechariah 1:7-9	28
Zechariah 1:10-11	30
Zechariah 1:12-13	31
Zechariah 1:14-15	32
Zechariah 1:16-17	33
Zechariah 1:18-19	35
Zechariah 1:20-21	36
Zechariah 2 General Notes	37
Zechariah 2:1-2	38
Zechariah 2:3-5	39
Zechariah 2:6-7	41
Zechariah 2:8-9	42
Zechariah 2:10-11	44
Zechariah 2:12-13	46
Zechariah 3 General Notes	47
Zechariah 3:1-3	48
Zechariah 3:4-5	50
Zechariah 3:6-7	51
Zechariah 3:8-9	52
Zechariah 3:10	54
Zechariah 4 General Notes	55
Zechariah 4:1-3	56
Zechariah 4:4-5	57
Zechariah 4:6-7	58
Zechariah 4:8-11	60
Zechariah 4:12-13	62
Zechariah 4:14	63
Zechariah 5 General Notes	64
Zechariah 5:1-2	65
Zechariah 5:3-4	66
Zechariah 5:5-7	68
Zechariah 5:8-9	69
Zechariah 5:10-11	70
Zechariah 6 General Notes	71
Zechariah 6:1-4	72

Table of Contents

Zechariah 6:5-6	73
Zechariah 6:7-8	74
Zechariah 6:9-11	75
Zechariah 6:12-13	77
Zechariah 6:14-15	79
Zechariah 7 General Notes	81
Zechariah 7:1-3	82
Zechariah 7:4-7	84
Zechariah 7:8-10	86
Zechariah 7:11-12	88
Zechariah 7:13-14	89
Zechariah 8 General Notes	90
Zechariah 8:1-3	91
Zechariah 8:4-5	93
Zechariah 8:6-8	94
Zechariah 8:9-10	96
Zechariah 8:11-12	98
Zechariah 8:13-15	100
Zechariah 8:16-17	102
Zechariah 8:18-19	103
Zechariah 8:20-22	104
Zechariah 8:23	105
Zechariah 9 General Notes	106
Zechariah 9:1-2	107
Zechariah 9:3-4	109
Zechariah 9:5-7	110
Zechariah 9:8	112
Zechariah 9:9-10	113
Zechariah 9:11-13	115
Zechariah 9:14-15	117
Zechariah 9:16-17	119
Zechariah 10 General Notes	120
Zechariah 10:1-2	121
Zechariah 10:3	123
Zechariah 10:4-5	124
Zechariah 10:6-7	126
Zechariah 10:8-10	128
Zechariah 10:11-12	129
Zechariah 11 General Notes	131
Zechariah 11:1-3	132
Zechariah 11:4-6	134
Zechariah 11:7-9	136
Zechariah 11:10-12	138

Zechariah 11:13-14	139
Zechariah 11:15-16	140
Zechariah 11:17	141
Zechariah 12 General Notes	142
Zechariah 12:1-3	143
Zechariah 12:4-5	145
Zechariah 12:6	146
Zechariah 12:7-9	148
Zechariah 12:10-11	150
Zechariah 12:12-14	152
Zechariah 13 General Notes	153
Zechariah 13:1-2	154
Zechariah 13:3	156
Zechariah 13:4-6	157
Zechariah 13:7	159
Zechariah 13:8-9	161
Zechariah 14 General Notes	163
Zechariah 14:1-2	164
Zechariah 14:3-4	166
Zechariah 14:5	167
Zechariah 14:6-8	168
Zechariah 14:9-11	169
Zechariah 14:12-13	171
Zechariah 14:14-15	172
Zechariah 14:16-18	174
Zechariah 14:19	176
Zechariah 14:20-21	177
translationQuestions	179
Zechariah 1	179
Zechariah 2	181
Zechariah 3	182
Zechariah 4	184
Zechariah 5	186
Zechariah 6	187
Zechariah 7	189
Zechariah 8	190
Zechariah 9	192
Zechariah 10	194
Zechariah 11	195
Zechariah 12	197
Zechariah 13	199
Zechariah 14	201

translationWords	203
twelve tribes of Israel	203
abomination, abominable	204
accuse, accusation, accuser	205
afflict, affliction	206
altar	207
angel, archangel	208
angry, anger	210
Arabah	211
Ashdod, Azotus	212
Ashkelon	213
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	214
Babylon, Babylonian	215
Bashan	216
beg, beggar	217
Benjamin	218
Bethel	219
biblical time: day	220
biblical time: year	221
bles, blessed, blessing	222
blood	224
bow and arrow	225
bronze	226
brother	227
call, calling, called, call out	228
camel	230
captive, captivity	231
Translation Suggestions	232
cedar	233
chariot	234
Christ, Messiah	235
clan	237
comfort, comforter	238
command, to command, commandment	239
compassion, compassionate	240
consume	241
cornerstone	242
courtyard, court	243
covenant	244
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unending love	246
cross	247
crown, to crown	248
curse, cursed	249

cut off	250
cypress	251
Damascus	252
Darius	253
David	254
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh	255
death, die, dead	256
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	258
declare, declaration	259
decree	260
desolate, desolation	261
devour	262
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer	263
dominion	264
donkey, mule	265
dream	266
earth, earthly	267
Egypt, Egyptian	268
Ekron	269
Ephraim	270
evil, wicked, wickedness	271
exile, the Exile	273
face	274
false prophet	276
fast	277
ancestor, father, forefather	278
favor, favorable, favoritism	279
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh	280
festival	281
fig	282
fire	283
firstborn	284
flesh	285
flock, herd	286
fool, foolish, folly	287
forsake, forsaken, forsook	288
foundation, founded	289
fruit, fruitful	290
gate, gate bar	292
Gaza	293
Gilead	294
glory, glorious	295
goat, kid	296

Table of Contents

God	297
gold	299
good, goodness	300
grain	302
Greece	303
hand, right hand, to hand over	304
heal, cure	306
heart	307
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	308
high priest	309
holy, holiness	311
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord	312
honor, to honor	314
hoof, hoofed, hooves	315
hope	316
horse	317
house	318
house of David	319
house of God, Yahweh's house	320
humble, humility	321
idol, idolatrous	322
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	323
iniquity	325
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel	326
jealous, jealousy	327
Jebusites, Jebus	328
Jerusalem	329
Jordan River	331
Joseph (OT)	332
Joshua	333
Josiah	334
joy, joyful	335
Judah	336
judge, judgment	337
just, justice, justly	339
Judah, kingdom of Judah	340
king	342
know, knowledge, make known	343
lament, lamentation	344
lamp	345
lampstand	346
last day, last days, latter days	347
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	348

Lebanon	350
Levite, Levi	351
life, live, living, alive	352
light	354
lion	355
lord, master, sir	356
Lord	357
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God	358
lowly, lowliness	359
majesty	360
memorial, memorial offering	361
mercy, merciful	362
mighty, might	364
Mount of Olives	365
mourn, mourning	366
name	367
Nathan	368
nation	369
Negev	370
neighbor	371
Nile River, River of Egypt	372
oak	373
oath, swear, swear by	374
oil	375
olive	376
oppress, oppression, oppressor	377
peace, peaceful	378
people group, peoples, the people, a people	379
people of God, my people	381
perish, perishing, perishable	382
Philistines	383
pit	384
plague	385
plead, pleading, plea	386
possess, possession	387
priest, priesthood	388
prison, prisoner, imprison	390
proclaim, proclamation	391
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	392
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	394
punish, punishment	395
rebuke	397
redeem, redemption, redeemer	398

Table of Contents

reign	399
rejoice	400
remnant	401
repent, repentance	402
rest	403
restore, restoration	404
righteous, righteousness	405
right hand	406
robe	407
ruler, rulers, rule	408
sacrifice, offering	409
Satan, devil, evil one	411
save, safe	413
scroll	415
seize	416
send, send out, sent	417
servant, slave, slavery	418
set apart	420
sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking	421
shame, shameful, ashamed	422
sheep, ram, ewe	423
shepherd, to shepherd	424
Shimei	426
Shinar	427
Sidon, Sidonians	428
siege, besiege	429
sign, proof, reminder	430
silver	432
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	433
slaughter	435
son, son of	436
sow, sower, plant	438
spirit, spiritual	439
splendor	441
staff	442
stronghold, fortress, fortified	443
suffer, suffering	444
sword	445
temple	446
tent	448
test	449
throne	450
tongue	451

tribe	452
true, truth, come true	453
trumpet	455
Tyre, Tyrians	456
unclean	457
understand, understanding	458
Uzziah, Azariah	459
vine	460
virgin	461
vision	462
voice	463
walk	464
waste, wasteland	465
watch, watchman	466
water, waters	467
wine, wineskin, new wine	468
winepress	469
wise, wisdom	470
woe	471
word	472
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	473
worship	475
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	476
wrath, fury	477
Yahweh	478
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host	480
zeal, zealous	481
Zechariah (OT)	482
Zephaniah	483
Zerubbabel	484
Zion, Mount Zion	485
translationAcademy	486
Active or Passive	486
Apostrophe	489
Doublet	491
Ellipsis	493
Euphemism	495
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	497
Hendiadys	499
Hyperbole	501
Idiom	504
Irony	506
Merism	509

Table of Contents

Metaphor	511
Metonymy	516
Parallelism	518
Personification	520
Rhetorical Question	522
Simile	525
Synecdoche	528
Biblical Distance	530
Biblical Money	533
Hebrew Months	535
How to Translate Names	538
Numbers	542
Ordinal Numbers	545
Translate Unknowns	548

translationNotes

Introduction to Zechariah

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Zechariah

1. The prophet's call and the appeal for the returning nation of Israel to repent and return to Yahweh (1:1–6)
2. The Eight Night-Visions
 - a) First Vision, Yahweh sends his messengers throughout the whole earth (1:7–17)
 - b) Second Vision, Four horns and four craftsmen (1:18–21)
 - c) Third Vision, The Measuring Line (2:1–13)
 - d) Fourth Vision, The Priest in filthy clothes (3:1–10)
 - e) Fifth Vision, Golden Lampstand and olive trees (4:1–14)
 - f) Sixth Vision, The flying scroll (5:1–4)
 - g) Seventh Vision, The basket filled with iniquity (5:5–11)
 - h) Eighth Vision, Four chariots (6:1–8)
3. Crown for the High Priest (6:9–15)
4. Questions about fasting (7:1–8:23)
5. The oracle about Hadrach (of Damascus) and Hamath (of Tyre and Sidon) (9:1–11:17)
6. The oracle about Israel
 - a) Final removal of idols from returning Israel (14:1–2)
 - b) Future vision of Messianic Kingdom (14:3–21)

What is the Book of Zechariah about?

Zechariah wrote to the people of Judah who returned from exile in Babylon. The people of Judah were committing the same sins that caused the exile. Zechariah calls on the people to return to the Lord and renew the covenant with Yahweh. Also, many people were disappointed that the new temple was much smaller than the original temple. He encourages the people and shares the vision about the temple in the future. (See: [covenant](#))

How should the title of this book be translated?

It is suggested that translators use a self-explanatory title or follow the regional or the national language versions of the Bible. "Zechariah" may also be called the "The book about Zechariah" or "The sayings of Zechariah." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of Zechariah?

The prophet Zechariah wrote this book between 520 BC to 480 BC following the ministry of Haggai.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Did Zechariah prophesy before Ezra and Nehemiah?

The historical context of this book is likely prior to the lives of Ezra and Nehemiah. The prophecies of Zechariah occur prior to the events of the books of Ezra and Nehemiah and just two months after the prophecies of Haggai.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. The descendants of Jacob, who was also named Israel, were a people group who became known as Israel. This people group developed into the unified nation of Israel. After the civil war in the nation of Israel, the tribes in the north took the name Israel, while the southern kingdom became known as the Kingdom of Judah. Zechariah uses the term “Israel” to refer to both the nation of Israel as well as the northern kingdom of Israel.

What imagery does Zechariah use in reference to the Messiah?

Zechariah presents the Messiah as both a king and a shepherd. The Messiah will come as a deliverer, yet be “pierced” and “lamented.” The Messiah will have great power but will still suffer. (See: [Christ, Messiah](#) and [lament, lamentation](#))

What does the phrase “that day” mean?

Zechariah often speaks of the last days by using the phrase “that day” or “in that day.” When referencing a future “day,” the translator should be aware that it is possible that the author is speaking about the last days. (See: [last day, last days, latter days](#))

List of translationAcademy Topics in Zechariah

- * [Active or Passive](#) is found in: [06:01, 06:14, 08:09, 14:01](#)
- * [Apostrophe](#) is found in: [11:01, 13:07](#)
- * [Doublet](#) is found in: [01:04, 01:10, 04:06, 09:09](#)
- * [Ellipsis](#) is found in: [04:01](#)
- * [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) is found in: [01:01, 01:14, 05:08, 06:09, 06:12, 06:14, 07:04, 08:06, 09:05](#)
- * [Hendiadys](#) is found in: [01:12, 14:09](#)
- * [Hyperbole](#) is found in: [14:01](#)
- * [Idiom](#) is found in: [01:01, 01:07, 01:20, 02:08, 02:10, 03:06, 03:10, 04:08, 06:09, 07:01, 07:08, 08:09, 08:13, 14:06](#)

- * **Irony** is found in: 09:01
- * **Merism** is found in: 05:08
- * **Metaphor** is found in: 01:04, 01:16, 02:03, 02:06, 02:08, 02:10, 02:12, 03:01, 03:04, 03:06, 03:08, 04:14, 05:03, 07:11, 07:13, 09:08, 09:11, 09:14, 10:03, 10:04, 10:11, 11:04, 11:17, 12:01, 12:06, 13:07, 13:08
- * **Metonymy** is found in: 01:16, 01:20, 02:08, 04:08, 04:14, 05:03, 06:14, 08:13, 09:01, 09:11, 09:14, 10:04, 10:11, 11:04, 11:17, 12:01, 12:04, 12:07, 12:12, 13:03, 14:03, 14:12
- * **Parallelism** is found in: 01:04, 09:09
- * **Personification** is found in: 11:01, 12:01, 12:06, 14:09
- * **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 01:04, 03:01, 04:06, 04:08, 04:12, 07:04, 08:06
- * **Simile** is found in: 02:06, 05:08, 07:11, 09:14, 09:16, 10:01, 10:03, 10:04, 10:06, 12:06
- * **Synecdoche** is found in: 01:18, 02:01, 02:12, 04:08, 05:01, 05:03, 05:05, 06:01, 07:04, 08:23, 09:03, 09:09, 09:16
- * **Biblical Distance** is found in: 05:01
- * **Biblical Money** is found in: 11:10, 11:13
- * **Hebrew Months** is found in: 01:01, 01:07, 07:01, 07:04, 08:18
- * **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:01, 01:07, 04:06, 06:09, 07:01, 09:01, 12:10, 14:05, 14:09
- * **Numbers** is found in: 07:04
- * **Ordinal Numbers** is found in: 01:01, 07:01, 07:04
- * **Translate Unknowns** is found in: 01:07

List of translationWords in Zechariah

- * **twelve tribes of Israel** is found in: 09:01
- * **abomination, abominable** is found in: 09:05
- * **accuse, accusation, accuser** is found in: 03:01
- * **afflict, affliction** is found in: 01:14, 10:11
- * **altar** is found in: 09:14, 14:20
- * **angel, archangel** is found in: 01:07, 01:10, 01:12, 01:14, 01:18, 02:03, 03:01, 03:04, 04:01, 04:04, 05:01, 05:05, 06:01, 12:07
- * **angry, anger** is found in: 01:14, 07:11, 08:13
- * **Arabah** is found in: 14:09
- * **Ashdod, Azotus** is found in: 09:05
- * **Ashkelon** is found in: 09:05

- * Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire is found in: 10:08
- * Babylon, Babylonian is found in: 02:06, 06:09
- * Bashan is found in: 11:01
- * beg, beggar is found in: 07:01, 08:20
- * Benjamin is found in: 14:09
- * Bethel is found in: 07:01
- * biblical time: day is found in: 01:07, 02:10, 03:10, 07:01
- * biblical time: year is found in: 01:01, 01:07, 07:01, 07:04
- * bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 08:13, 11:04
- * blood is found in: 09:05, 09:11
- * bow and arrow is found in: 09:09, 09:11
- * bronze is found in: 06:01
- * brother is found in: 07:08, 11:13
- * call, calling, called, call out is found in: 07:13, 08:01, 13:08
- * camel is found in: 14:14
- * captive, captivity is found in: 14:01
- * cedar is found in: 11:01
- * chariot is found in: 06:01, 06:05, 09:09
- * clan is found in: 09:05, 12:12
- * comfort, comforter is found in: 10:01
- * command, to command, commandment is found in: 01:04, 03:06
- * compassion, compassionate is found in: 01:12, 12:10
- * consume is found in: 05:03, 12:06
- * cornerstone is found in: 10:04
- * courtyard, court is found in: 03:06
- * covenant is found in: 09:11, 11:10
- * covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love is found in: 07:08
- * crown, to crown is found in: 06:09, 06:14, 09:16
- * curse, cursed is found in: 05:03, 08:13
- * cut off is found in: 05:03, 09:05, 09:09, 13:01, 13:08, 14:01
- * cypress is found in: 11:01

- * **Damascus** is found in: 09:01
- * **Darius** is found in: 01:01, 01:07, 07:01
- * **David** is found in: 12:12
- * **day of the Lord, day of Yahweh** is found in: 14:01
- * **death, die, dead** is found in: 12:10
- * **deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive** is found in: 13:04
- * **declare, declaration** is found in: 01:04, 01:16, 02:03, 02:06, 02:10, 03:08, 03:10, 05:03, 08:06, 09:01, 10:11, 11:04, 12:01, 13:08
- * **decree** is found in: 01:04
- * **desolate, desolation** is found in: 07:13
- * **devour** is found in: 09:03, 09:14, 11:01
- * **divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer** is found in: 10:01
- * **dominion** is found in: 09:09
- * **donkey, mule** is found in: 09:09, 14:14
- * **dream** is found in: 10:01
- * **earth, earthly** is found in: 01:10, 05:08, 06:05, 06:07, 08:11, 09:09, 12:01, 14:09, 14:16
- * **Egypt, Egyptian** is found in: 10:08, 14:16, 14:19
- * **Ekron** is found in: 09:05
- * **Ephraim** is found in: 09:09, 10:06
- * **evil, wicked, wickedness** is found in: 01:04, 05:08, 07:08, 08:16
- * **exile, the Exile** is found in: 06:09
- * **face** is found in: 05:03
- * **false prophet** is found in: 13:01
- * **fast** is found in: 07:01, 07:04, 08:18
- * **ancestor, father, forefather** is found in: 01:04
- * **favor, favorable, favoritism** is found in: 07:01, 08:20, 11:07, 11:10
- * **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh** is found in: 08:13, 09:05
- * **festival** is found in: 08:18, 14:16, 14:19
- * **fig** is found in: 03:10
- * **fire** is found in: 02:03, 09:03, 11:01, 13:08
- * **firstborn** is found in: 12:10
- * **flesh** is found in: 02:12, 11:07, 14:12

- * flock, herd is found in: 09:16, 10:03, 11:04, 11:07, 11:17, 13:07
- * fool, foolish, folly is found in: 11:15
- * forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 11:17
- * foundation, founded is found in: 08:09, 12:01
- * fruit, fruitful is found in: 08:11
- * gate, gate bar is found in: 08:16, 14:09
- * Gaza is found in: 09:05
- * Gilead is found in: 10:08
- * glory, glorious is found in: 02:03, 11:01
- * goat, kid is found in: 10:03
- * God is found in: 02:08, 06:14, 09:05, 10:06, 11:04, 13:08
- * gold is found in: 04:01, 06:09, 09:03, 13:08, 14:14
- * good, goodness is found in: 11:10
- * grain is found in: 09:16, 12:06
- * Greece is found in: 09:11
- * hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 02:08, 11:04, 13:07, 14:12
- * heal, cure is found in: 11:15
- * heart is found in: 07:08, 07:11, 08:16, 10:06, 12:04
- * heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 05:08, 06:05
- * high priest is found in: 03:01, 03:08, 06:09
- * holy, holiness is found in: 02:12, 08:01, 14:05
- * Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 07:11
- * honor, to honor is found in: 02:08, 12:07
- * hoof, hoofed, hooves is found in: 11:15
- * hope is found in: 09:11
- * horse is found in: 01:07, 06:01, 06:05, 06:07, 09:09, 10:03, 14:14, 14:20
- * house is found in: 01:16, 03:06, 06:09, 08:09, 08:13, 10:03, 10:06, 11:13
- * house of David is found in: 12:07, 12:10, 13:01
- * house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 07:01, 14:20
- * humble, humility is found in: 09:09
- * idol, idolatrous is found in: 10:01, 13:01

- * inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir is found in: 02:12, 08:11
- * iniquity is found in: 03:04, 05:05
- * Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 01:18, 11:13
- * jealous, jealousy is found in: 01:14
- * Jebusites, Jebus is found in: 09:05
- * Jerusalem is found in: 01:12, 01:14, 01:16, 01:18, 02:01, 02:12, 03:01, 07:04, 08:01, 08:13, 09:09, 12:01, 12:04, 12:06, 12:07, 12:10, 13:01, 14:01, 14:03, 14:09, 14:14, 14:20
- * Jordan River is found in: 11:01
- * Joseph (OT) is found in: 10:06
- * Joshua is found in: 03:01, 06:09
- * Josiah is found in: 06:09
- * joy, joyful is found in: 08:18
- * Judah is found in: 01:12, 01:18, 08:13, 09:05, 10:03, 10:06, 11:13, 12:04, 14:05, 14:14, 14:20
- * judge, judgment is found in: 07:08, 08:16
- * just, justice, justly is found in: 07:08, 08:16
- * king is found in: 07:01, 09:05, 11:04, 14:05, 14:09, 14:16
- * Judah, kingdom of Judah is found in: 01:20, 02:12, 11:04, 12:01, 12:06, 12:07
- * know, knowledge, make known is found in: 02:08, 04:04, 06:14
- * lament, lamentation is found in: 11:01, 12:10
- * lamp is found in: 04:01
- * lampstand is found in: 04:01, 04:08
- * law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 07:11
- * Lebanon is found in: 10:08, 11:01
- * Levite, Levi is found in: 12:12
- * life, live, living, alive is found in: 02:06, 03:08, 12:06
- * light is found in: 14:06
- * lion is found in: 11:01
- * lord, master, sir is found in: 04:04, 04:12, 06:01
- * Lord is found in: 01:07, 04:14, 06:05, 09:03
- * Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God is found in: 09:14
- * lowly, lowliness is found in: 13:07
- * majesty is found in: 10:11, 11:01

- * memorial, memorial offering is found in: 06:14
- * mercy, merciful is found in: 01:16, 07:08, 10:06
- * mighty, might is found in: 08:20
- * Mount of Olives is found in: 14:03
- * mourn, mourning is found in: 07:01, 07:04, 12:10, 12:12
- * name is found in: 05:03, 10:11, 13:01, 13:03, 13:08, 14:09
- * Nathan is found in: 12:12
- * nation is found in: 01:14, 01:20, 02:08, 02:10, 07:13, 08:13, 08:20, 09:09, 12:01, 12:07, 14:01, 14:03, 14:14, 14:16, 14:19
- * Negev is found in: 07:04
- * neighbor is found in: 03:10, 08:09, 08:16, 11:04, 11:07, 14:12
- * Nile River, River of Egypt is found in: 10:11
- * oak is found in: 11:01
- * oath, swear, swear by is found in: 05:03, 08:16
- * oil is found in: 04:12
- * olive is found in: 04:01, 04:08, 04:12
- * oppress, oppression, oppressor is found in: 07:08, 09:08
- * peace, peaceful is found in: 06:12, 08:09, 08:11, 09:09
- * people group, peoples, the people, a people is found in: 08:06, 09:16, 12:01, 13:08
- * people of God, my people is found in: 02:10, 08:06
- * perish, perishing, perishable is found in: 09:05, 11:15, 13:08
- * Philistines is found in: 09:05
- * pit is found in: 09:11
- * plague is found in: 14:12, 14:14, 14:16
- * plead, pleading, plea is found in: 12:10
- * possess, possession is found in: 02:12
- * priest, priesthood is found in: 06:12, 07:01, 07:04
- * prison, prisoner, imprison is found in: 09:11
- * proclaim, proclamation is found in: 07:04
- * prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 01:01, 01:07, 07:01, 07:04, 08:09, 13:03, 13:04
- * prosper, prosperity, prosperous is found in: 07:04

- * **punish, punishment** is found in: 10:03, 11:04, 14:19
- * **rebuke** is found in: 03:01
- * **reign** is found in: 01:01, 01:07
- * **rejoice** is found in: 10:06
- * **remnant** is found in: 08:06, 09:05
- * **repent, repentance** is found in: 01:04
- * **rest** is found in: 01:10
- * **restore, restoration** is found in: 10:06
- * **righteous, righteousness** is found in: 08:06, 09:09
- * **right hand** is found in: 03:01
- * **robe** is found in: 08:23
- * **ruler, rulers, rule** is found in: 06:12
- * **sacrifice, offering** is found in: 06:09, 14:20
- * **Satan, devil, evil one** is found in: 03:01
- * **save, safe** is found in: 10:06
- * **scroll** is found in: 05:01
- * **seize** is found in: 14:01
- * **send, send out, sent** is found in: 02:08, 02:10, 05:03, 06:14, 07:11
- * **servant, slave, slavery** is found in: 01:04, 02:08, 03:08
- * **set apart** is found in: 14:20
- * **sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking** is found in: 14:01
- * **shame, shameful, ashamed** is found in: 10:04, 13:04
- * **sheep, ram, ewe** is found in: 10:01, 11:07, 11:15
- * **shepherd, to shepherd** is found in: 10:01, 11:01, 11:04, 11:07, 11:15, 11:17, 13:07
- * **Shimei** is found in: 12:12
- * **Shinar** is found in: 05:10
- * **Sidon, Sidonians** is found in: 09:01
- * **siege, besiege** is found in: 12:01
- * **sign, proof, reminder** is found in: 03:08
- * **silver** is found in: 06:09, 09:03, 11:10, 13:08, 14:14
- * **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning** is found in: 03:01, 03:08, 13:01

- * slaughter is found in: 11:04, 11:07
- * son, son of is found in: 01:07, 09:11, 12:10
- * sow, sower, plant is found in: 08:11
- * spirit, spiritual is found in: 06:07, 12:01, 12:10, 13:01
- * splendor is found in: 06:12
- * staff is found in: 08:04, 11:07, 11:10, 11:13
- * stronghold, fortress, fortified is found in: 09:03, 09:11
- * suffer, suffering is found in: 01:12, 10:01, 14:14
- * sword is found in: 09:11, 11:17, 13:07
- * temple is found in: 06:12, 06:14, 08:09
- * tent is found in: 10:04, 12:07
- * test is found in: 13:08
- * throne is found in: 06:12
- * tongue is found in: 14:12
- * tribe is found in: 11:10
- * true, truth, come true is found in: 07:08, 08:01, 08:06, 08:16
- * trumpet is found in: 09:14
- * Tyre, Tyrians is found in: 09:01
- * unclean is found in: 13:01
- * understand, understanding is found in: 06:12
- * Uzziah, Azariah is found in: 14:05
- * vine is found in: 03:10, 08:11
- * virgin is found in: 09:16
- * vision is found in: 13:04
- * voice is found in: 06:14
- * walk is found in: 03:06, 10:11
- * waste, wasteland is found in: 07:13
- * watch, watchman is found in: 09:08
- * water, waters is found in: 14:06
- * wine, wineskin, new wine is found in: 09:14, 09:16
- * winepress is found in: 14:09

- * wise, wisdom is found in: 09:01
- * woe is found in: 11:17
- * word is found in: 01:04, 01:12, 07:04
- * word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 01:01, 01:07, 06:09, 07:01, 07:04, 09:01, 12:01
- * worship is found in: 14:16
- * worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 11:17
- * wrath, fury is found in: 10:03
- * Yahweh is found in: 01:10, 01:12, 01:20, 02:03, 02:06, 02:10, 02:12, 03:01, 09:14, 10:01, 11:04, 11:13, 11:15, 12:04, 12:07, 13:03, 13:08, 14:03, 14:05, 14:06, 14:09, 14:20
- * Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 01:14, 01:16, 02:08, 02:10, 03:06, 05:03, 06:12, 06:14, 07:01, 07:04, 07:11, 08:01, 09:14, 10:03, 12:04, 13:01, 13:07, 14:16, 14:20
- * zeal, zealous is found in: 08:01
- * Zechariah (OT) is found in: 01:01, 07:01
- * Zephaniah is found in: 06:09, 06:14
- * Zerubbabel is found in: 04:06
- * Zion, Mount Zion is found in: 01:14, 01:16, 02:06, 02:10, 08:01, 09:09

Zechariah 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is written in prose mainly with imagery used throughout to portray Zechariah's vision given by the Lord.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 1:3-6, 14-17, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

Visions

This book contains a number of visions given to Zechariah so the images are not ones Zechariah actually saw but were given to him in a vision or dream. It is important for each of these visions to keep their meanings and not be interpreted to mean any specific thing.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Date

Zechariah uses two separate dates in this first chapter. When compared to the book of Haggai, Zechariah's prophecy was proclaimed just a few weeks after Haggai. However, they prophesied in two different places: Haggai in Jerusalem and Zechariah was somewhere outside of Jerusalem. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Zechariah 01:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 1:1-3

UDB:

¹ When Darius had been the emperor of Persia for two years, in the eighth month his reign, Yahweh gave Zechariah the prophet, son of Berekiah and grandson of Iddo the prophet, this message:

² "I was very angry with your ancestors. ³ So tell this to the people: Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says this: 'Return to me, and if you do that, I will help you again.

ULB:

1 ¹ In the eighth month of the second year of Darius' reign, the word of Yahweh came to Zechariah son of Berechiah son of Iddo, the prophet, saying, ² "Yahweh was exceedingly angry with your fathers! ³ Say to them, 'Yahweh of hosts says this:

Turn to me!—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts—
and I will return to you, says Yahweh of hosts.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- Darius
- reign
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Zechariah (OT)
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host

translationNotes:

- **In the eighth month** - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **second year of Darius' reign** - "second year since Darius became king" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.
- **Berechiah ... Iddo** - These are the names of males. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **exceedingly angry with your fathers** - "very angry with your forefathers"
- **Turn to me** - The word "turn" is used to refer to a change. Yahweh is telling the people of Israel to change from not obeying him to obeying him. (See: [Idiom](#))

- **this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **I will return to you** - By saying he will return to the people of Israel, Yahweh is saying that they will have good things happen because he is helping them. AT: “I will bless you.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 1:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ Do not be like your ancestors. Prophets, who have now died, continually proclaimed to your ancestors that they should stop doing the evil things that they were always doing. But they refused to pay attention to what I said. ⁵ Your ancestors have died and are now in their graves. Even the prophets did not live forever either. ⁶ But the commands and the decrees that I had instructed my servants the prophets to tell them—your ancestors did not obey them, so I punished them. So then they repented and said that I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, had done to them what they deserved for their evil behavior, just like I had said I would do.”

ULB:

⁴ Do not be like your fathers to whom the prophets cried out previously, saying, “Yahweh of hosts says this: Turn from your evil ways and wicked practices!” But they would not hear and did not pay attention to me—this is Yahweh’s declaration.’

⁵ Your fathers, where are they? Where are the prophets, are they here forever?

⁶ But my words and my decrees that I commanded my servants the prophets, have they not overtaken your fathers?

So they repented and said, ‘Just as Yahweh of hosts planned to do to us what our ways and actions deserved, so he has dealt with us.’”

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- declare, declaration
- word
- decree
- command, to command, commandment
- servant, slave, slavery
- repent, repentance

translationNotes:

- **cried out** - “shouted”
- **Turn from** - “Change”

- **But they would not hear and did not pay attention to me** - Both of these phrases mean that the people of Israel would not obey the commands of Yahweh. AT: “But they would not listen to my commands” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **Your fathers, where are they? Where are the prophets, are they here forever?** - Both of these questions are asked to point out the fact that people die. AT: “Your fathers have died. The prophets will also die.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **But my words and my decrees that I commanded my servants the prophets, have they not overtaken your fathers?** - This question is used to show the people of Israel that everything that the Lord had told his prophets to warn their ancestors about, had happened. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **my words and my decrees** - These are both ways to refer to what God has said to the prophets. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **overtaken your fathers** - Yahweh speaks about his prophecies like they are running to catch up and pass the ancestors of the people of Israel. The word “overtaken” means passed. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **our ways and acts** - “our behavior and actions”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 1:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ On the twenty-fourth day of the eleventh month, Yahweh gave another message to me.

⁸ During the night I had a vision. In the vision I saw an angel who was on a red horse. He was in a narrow valley among some myrtle trees. Behind him were angels on other horses—red, reddish-brown, and white horses.

⁹ I asked the angel who had been talking to me, “Sir, who are those angels on the horses?”

He replied, “I will show you who they are.”

ULB:

⁷ On the twenty-fourth day of the eleventh month, which is the month of Shebat, in the second year of Darius’ reign, the word of Yahweh came to Zechariah son of Berechiah son of Iddo, the prophet, saying, ⁸ “I saw in the night, and, look! a man was riding on a red horse, and he was among the myrtle trees that are in the valley; and behind him there were red, reddish-brown, and white horses.” ⁹ I said, “What are these things, Lord?” Then angel who talked with me said to me, “I will show you what these things are.”

translationWords:

- biblical time: day
- biblical time: year
- Darius
- reign
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- son, son of
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- horse
- Lord
- angel, archangel

translationNotes:

- **the twenty-fourth day of the eleventh month, which is the month of Shebat** - “Shebat” is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-fourth day is near the middle of February on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came** - “Yahweh spoke his word.” See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

- **Berechiah ... Iddo** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **myrtle trees** - a kind of small tree with colorful flowers. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 1:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Then the angel who had stopped under the myrtle trees explained. He said, “They are the angels whom Yahweh has sent to patrol the entire world.”

¹¹ Then those angels reported to the angel of Yahweh who was under the myrtle trees, “We have traveled throughout the world, and we have found out that the army of the emperor has conquered nations throughout the world, and that they are now helpless and inactive.”

ULB:

¹⁰ Then the man who stood among the myrtle trees answered and said, “These are those Yahweh has sent out to roam throughout the earth.” ¹¹ They answered the angel of Yahweh who stood among the myrtle trees; they said to him, “We have been roaming throughout the earth; see, all the earth sits still and is at rest.”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [rest](#)

translationNotes:

- **These are those ... They answered** - The words “these” and “they” refer to the horses among the myrtle trees.
- **roam throughout the earth** - Possible meanings: 1) “patrol the entire world” or 2) “walk throughout the earth”
- **among the myrtle trees** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **all the earth sits still and is at rest** - AT: “all the people in the world are at peace”
- **sits still and is at rest** - Both of these phrases refer to being able to relax without anything to worry about. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 1:12-13

UDB:

¹² Then the angel asked, “Yahweh, Commander of the angel armies, how long will you continue to not act mercifully toward Jerusalem and the other towns in Judah? You have been angry with them for seventy years!” ¹³ So Yahweh spoke kindly to the angel who had talked to me, saying things that comforted him.

ULB:

¹² Then the angel of Yahweh answered and said, “Yahweh of hosts, how long will you show no compassion to Jerusalem and to the cities of Judah that have suffered indignation these seventy years?” ¹³ Yahweh answered the angel who had talked with me, with good words, words of comfort.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [word](#)

translationNotes:

- **have suffered indignation** - Possible meanings 1) “you have been angry with” (UBD) or 2) “have been treated with disrespect”
- **talked with me, with good words, words of comfort** - These phrases describe words that are both good and comforting. AT: “encouraged me” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 1:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then the angel who had been talking with me said to me, "Proclaim this to the people of Jerusalem: Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says that he is very concerned about the people who live on Mount Zion and in the other parts of Jerusalem. ¹⁵ And he is very angry with the nations that are proud and feel safe. He was only a little bit angry with Judah, but they caused them to suffer much more.

ULB:

¹⁴ So the angel who had talked with me said to me, "Call out and say, 'Yahweh of hosts says this:

I have been jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion with a great passion!

¹⁵ I am very angry with the nations that are at ease.

When I was only a little angry with them, they made the disaster worse.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [jealous, jealousy](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [nation](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)

translationNotes:

- **I am very angry with the nations that are at ease** - AT: "I am very angry with the nations that enjoy peace and security"
- **I was only a little angry** - AT: "I was only a little angry with the people of Judah" (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 1:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Therefore, he says that he will go back to Jerusalem and help the people. It will be as if he himself had surveyed and measured all the land in the city. ¹⁷ Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, also said to tell people in his cities in Judah that they will soon be very prosperous again. He will encourage the people of Jerusalem again, and he will again choose Jerusalem as his special city.”

ULB:

¹⁶ Therefore Yahweh of hosts says this:

I have returned to Jerusalem with mercies. My house will be built within her

—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts—and the measuring line will be stretched out over Jerusalem!’

¹⁷ Again call out, saying,

’Yahweh of hosts says this: My cities will once again overflow with goodness, and Yahweh will again comfort Zion, and he will once again choose Jerusalem.’”

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Jerusalem
- mercy, merciful
- house
- declare, declaration
- Zion, Mount Zion

translationNotes:

- **I have returned to Jerusalem with mercies** - Returning to Jerusalem refers to once again taking care of the people of Israel like a king returning to lead his people out of trouble. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **My house will be built within her** - AT: “My temple will be built in Jerusalem”
- **this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **the measuring line will be stretched out over Jerusalem!** - AT: “Jerusalem will be surveyed before rebuilding”

- **My cities will once again overflow with goodness** - Yahweh refers to the good things he will do for the people of Israel like a liquid that could fill the cities and flow over the walls. AT: “The cities of Israel will once again be prosperous” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh will again comfort Zion** - AT: “Yahweh will encourage the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 1:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Then I looked up and saw four animal horns in front of me. ¹⁹ I asked the angel who had been speaking to me, “What are those horns?”

He replied, “Those horns represent the nations that forced the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah and Israel to go to other countries.”

ULB:

¹⁸ Then I lifted up my eyes and saw four horns! ¹⁹ I spoke to the angel who talked with me, “What are these?” He answered me, “These are the horns that have scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem.”

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Zechariah continues to describe his vision.
- **I lifted up my eyes** - This phrase refers to turning your head to look up. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the horns that have scattered Judah** - These horns represent the armies that attacked the people of Israel. AT: “Those horns represent the nations” (UDB).

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 1:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Then Yahweh showed me four blacksmiths. ²¹ I asked, “What are those men coming to do?”

He replied, “The nations that those horns represent scattered the people of Judah, so they suffered greatly. But these blacksmiths are coming to frighten and destroy those nations and to throw down their horns, their power—all those nations who had attacked the land of Judah.”

ULB:

²⁰ Then Yahweh showed me four craftsmen. ²¹ I said, “What are these people coming to do?” He answered, and said, “These are the horns that scattered Judah so that no man would lift up his head. But these people are coming to drive them out, to cast down the horns of the nations that lifted up any horn against the land of Judah to scatter her.”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to describe Zechariah’s vision for him.
- **blacksmiths** - People with this job make things out of metal. They are used to refer to the swords of an army. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the horns that scattered Judah** - See note in [1:18](#).
- **no man would lift up his head** - This phrase describes someone who is too afraid to look something that scares him. AT: “no man would have courage” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **drive them out** - “drive those nations out”
- **to cast down the horns** - “to defeat the armies”
- **lifted up any horn** - This refers to blowing a horn to command an army. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 01 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is introduced in prose with imagery used in the rest of the chapter to portray Zechariah's third vision about measuring lines given by the Lord.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 2:4-13, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

Visions

This book contains a number of visions given to Zechariah so the images are not ones Zechariah actually saw but were given to him in a vision or dream. It is important for each of these visions to keep their meanings and not be interpreted to mean any specific thing. So please be careful to translate each of the terms in your language.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

"This is Yahweh's declaration"

This phrase is used several times in this chapter. The UDB often translates this as "Yahweh says".

Links:

- [Zechariah 02:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 2:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then I looked up and saw a man with a surveyor's line. ² I asked him, "Where are you going?" He replied, "I am going to survey Jerusalem, to determine how wide it is and how long it is."

ULB:

² ¹ Next I lifted up my eyes and saw a man with a measuring line in his hand. ² I said, "Where are you going?" So he said to me, "To measure Jerusalem, to determine its width and length."

translationWords:

- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Zechariah continues to describe his visions.
- **I lifted up my eyes** - AT: "I looked up" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **measuring line** - A rope with a certain length used to measure large things.
- **So he said to me** - "So the man with the measuring line said to me"

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 2:3-5

UDB:

³ Then the angel who had been talking to me started to leave, and another angel walked toward him. ⁴ The second angel said to him, "Run and tell that young man with the surveyor's line: some day there will be very many people and livestock in Jerusalem, so they will not all be able to live inside the city walls; many will live outside the walls in the open country. ⁵ Yahweh says that he himself will be like a wall of fire around the city, and he will be among the people with his glory."

ULB:

³ Then the angel who had talked with me went away and another angel went out to meet him. ⁴ The second angel said to him, "Run and speak to that young man; say,

'Jerusalem will sit in the open country
because of the multitudes of men and beasts within her.

⁵ For I—this is Yahweh's declaration—will become for her a wall of fire
around her,

and I will be the glory in her midst.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- fire
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **another angel went out to meet him** - This angel is a new person and has not appeared before, and so should be clearly introduced as a new participant. AT: "a new angel went out to meet him:"
- **The second angel said to him, "Run and speak to that young man** - "The second angel said to the angel who had spoken with Zechariah, 'Go quickly and tell the man with the measuring line'"
- **Jerusalem will sit in the open country** - This phrase means that Jerusalem will not be surrounded by walls.
- **become for her a wall of fire around her** - Yahweh is saying he will protect Jerusalem and compares his protection to a wall of fire. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 2:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Yahweh declares to the people who the Babylonians took away as slaves: “Run! Run! Flee from Babylonia, and flee from the places where I scattered you to the four winds!”

⁷ Run! You who now live in Babylon, run here to Jerusalem!”

ULB:

⁶ Up! Up! Flee from the land of the north—this is Yahweh’s declaration—
for I have scattered you like the four winds of the skies!—This is Yahweh’s
declaration.

⁷ Up! Escape to Zion, you who live with the daughter of Babylon!”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

translationNotes:

- **Up! Up!** - These two words are repeated and show urgency to the message that follows. It is used twice because the message is very important.
- **land of the north** - This refers to Babylon.
- **I have scattered you like the four winds of the skies** - This means the people of Israel are far from each other. The four winds refer to different parts of the earth. (See: [Simile](#))
- **daughter of Babylon** - This refers to the capital city of Babylon. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 2:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, honored me by telling me to go to the nations who took everything you owned, for those who harm you harm what is most precious to him! After he did that, he said this to me: ⁹ “Tell them that I, Yahweh, will attack them. Their own slaves will take back their possessions from them, the people who had taken them in the first place.” When that happens, you Jewish people will know that Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, is the one who sent me, Zechariah, as a prophet.

ULB:

⁸ For after Yahweh of hosts honored me and sent me against the nations that plundered you—
 for whoever touches you, touches the apple of God’s eye!—after Yahweh did this, he said,
⁹ “I myself will shake my hand over them, and they will be plunder for their slaves.”
 Then you will know that Yahweh of hosts has sent me.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- honor, to honor
- send, send out, sent
- nation
- God
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- servant, slave, slavery
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Zechariah tells how Yahweh is sending him to judge the nations who have plundered Jerusalem.
- **plundered you** - “stole things from Jerusalem after it was attacked” (See: **Idiom**)
- **for whoever touches you** - The word “touches” refers to a touch meant to harm. AT: “for whoever hurts you” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **the apple of God’s eye** - The apple of an eye refers to the dark part inside of the eyeball that allows a person to see. This is a very important and sensitive part of the body. This phrase is used to say Jerusalem is very important to God and something he will protect. (See: **Idiom**)

- **shake my hand over them** - This is a gesture used to show that God has chosen to destroy something. AT: “signal they are going to be destroyed” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **and they will be plunder** - Their cities have already been destroyed and are left open for people to steal anything they would like. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 2:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Yahweh says, “You people of Jerusalem, shout and be happy, because I will come to you and live among you!”

¹¹ At that time, people of many nations will join with Yahweh and become his people. He will live among all of you; and you will know that Yahweh, powerful Commander of the angel armies, is the one who sent me to you as a prophet.

ULB:

¹⁰ ”Sing for joy, daughter of Zion,

for I myself am about to come and encamp among you!—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

¹¹ Then great nations will join themselves to Yahweh in that day. He says, “Then you will become my people;

for I will encamp in the midst of you,” and you will know that Yahweh of hosts has sent me to you.

translationWords:

- Zion, Mount Zion
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- nation
- biblical time: day
- people of God, my people
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- send, send out, sent

translationNotes:

- **daughter of Zion** - This is another name for Jerusalem that refers to the city like a daughter of the heavenly city of Zion. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **encamp** - to set up and use a camp
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **nations will join themselves to Yahweh** - “nations will become loyal to Yahweh”
- **in that day** - AT: “at that time” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 2:12-13

UDB:

¹² The people of Judah will be a very special part of his own land, and Jerusalem will again be the city that he has chosen. ¹³ Everyone, everywhere, should be silent in the presence of Yahweh, because he is about to come down again from where he lives in heaven to do great things for us.

ULB:

¹² For Yahweh will inherit Judah as his rightful possession in the holy land and will once again choose Jerusalem for himself.

¹³ Be silent, all flesh, before Yahweh, for he has been roused from out of his holy place!

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [flesh](#)

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh will inherit ... in the holy land** - "Yahweh will make Judah his personal portion of the holy land. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **all flesh** - Yahweh refers to all living creatures by calling them flesh. Flesh is something that is common among all living creatures. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **has been roused from out of his holy place!** - This phrase refers to Yahweh being caused to take action on earth.
- **roused** - to be woken up or made more alert

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 02 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is introduced in prose and shares the fourth vision of the priest in dirty clothes. (See: [priest, priesthood](#))

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 3:7-9, which is an extended quotation.

Difficult concepts in this chapter

Visions

It is important for each of these visions to keep their meanings and not be interpreted to mean any specific thing.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The High Priest

This chapter seems to refer to a particular person, Joshua the high priest. However, little is known about him. (See: [high priest](#))

Links:

- [Zechariah 03:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 3:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh showed me Joshua, the high priest, who was standing in front of the angel that Yahweh had sent. And Satan was standing at Joshua's right side, ready to accuse him of having sinned. ² But the angel of Yahweh said to Satan, "Satan, may Yahweh rebuke you! He has chosen Jerusalem to be his special city, and may he rebuke you! This man, Joshua, has been brought back from Babylonia; he is certainly like a burning stick that someone has snatched from a fire."

³ Now as Joshua was standing in front of the angel, he was wearing filthy clothes.

ULB:

3 ¹ Then Yahweh showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of Yahweh and Satan was standing at his right hand to accuse him of sin. ² The angel of Yahweh said to Satan, "May Yahweh rebuke you, Satan; may Yahweh, who has chosen Jerusalem, rebuke you! Is this not a brand pulled from the fire?" ³ Joshua was dressed in filthy garments as he stood before the angel.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Joshua
- high priest
- angel, archangel
- Satan, devil, evil one
- right hand
- accuse, accusation, accuser
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- rebuke
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh shows Zechariah a vision.
- **Is this not a brand pulled from the fire?** - AT: "Joshua is like a stick pulled from a fire" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **a brand pulled from the fire** - A brand is a piece of burning wood that is removed from a fire before it is completely burned up. This refers to Joshua, who was rescued from captivity in Babylon and returned to Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **filthy garments** - In this vision dirty clothes are being used as a symbol to show sinfulness.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 3:4-5

UDB:

⁴ So the angel said to those other angels who were standing in front of him, “Take off those clothes he is wearing!”

After they did that, the angel said to Joshua, “Look! I have taken away the guilt of your sins, and I will put beautiful clothes on you instead.”

⁵ Then the angel said to them, “Put a clean turban on his head!” So they put a clean turban on his head and new clothes on him, while the angel of Yahweh was standing there looking on.

ULB:

⁴ The angel spoke and said to those who stood before him, “Remove the filthy garments from upon him.” Then he said to Joshua, “Look! I have caused your iniquity to pass from you and I will dress you in fine clothing.” ⁵ He said, “Let them put a clean turban on his head!” So they set a clean turban on Joshua’s head and clothed him with clean garments while the angel of Yahweh was standing by.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [iniquity](#)

translationNotes:

- **dress you in fine clothing** - Here fine clothing symbolizes righteousness. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **turban** - a piece of long cloth wrapped around the head

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 3:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then the same angel said this to Joshua: ⁷ "Yahweh, Commander of the angel armies, says that if you do what I want you to do and obey my instructions, you will be in charge of my temple and its courtyard. And I will allow you to be part of this group of angels who are always standing near to me and can speak with me at any time.

ULB:

⁶ Next the angel of Yahweh solemnly commanded Joshua and said, ⁷ "Yahweh of hosts says this:

If you will walk in my ways, and if you will keep my commandments,
then you will govern my house and guard my courts,
for I will allow you to go and come among these who stand before me.

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [walk](#)
- [house](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:

- **solemnly commanded Joshua** - "commanded Joshua in a very serious manner"
- **will walk in my ways** - Walking in the same ways refers to doing the same things. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **if you will keep my commandments** - AT: "if you will remember and obey my commandments" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **guard my courts** - "be responsible for my courtyards"

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 3:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Joshua, you are the high priest, and your associates are sitting in front of you. The fact that they are here means that I will bring a special servant of mine, someone who I will call the Branch.” ⁹ Then the angel of Yahweh placed a stone in front of Joshua and said to him and to the other men with him: ”Look at the stone that I have put in front of Joshua. There are seven sides on the stone. I will engrave a message on that stone, and in one day I will remove the guilt of all the people of this country.

ULB:

⁸ Listen, Joshua the high priest, you and your companions who live with you!

For these men are a sign, for I myself will bring up my servant the Branch.

⁹ Now look at the stone that I have set before Joshua. There are seven eyes on this single stone,

and I will engrave an inscription—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts—

and I will remove the sin from this land in one day.

translationWords:

- high priest
- life, live, living, alive
- sign, proof, reminder
- servant, slave, slavery
- declare, declaration
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel of Yahweh continues to speak to Joshua.
- **your companions who live with you** - AT: “the other priest who live with you”
- **my servant the Branch** - The title “Branch” should be translated in the same way as the branch of a tree. It means the servant of Yahweh will come from Yahweh like a branch comes from a tree. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **seven eyes** - That is, seven sides.
- **engrave** - “carve”
- **inscription** - words that are written on something or cut into something

- **this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 3:10

UDB:

¹⁰ At that time, each of you will invite his friends to come and sit under his grapevine and under his fig tree. That is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, declares.”

ULB:

¹⁰ In that day—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts—each man will invite his neighbor to sit under his vine and under his fig tree.”

translationWords:

- [biblical time: day](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [vine](#)
- [fig](#)

translationNotes:

- **In that day** - AT: “At that time” (UDB) (See: [Idiom](#))
- **this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 03 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is written mainly in prose about the fifth vision about the golden lampstand and olive trees.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 4:6-7, 9-14, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

Visions

This chapter shows a conversation between Zechariah and the angel of Yahweh. It is important for each of these visions to keep their meanings and not be interpreted to mean any specific thing.

Links:

- [Zechariah 04:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 4:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then the angel who had been talking with me returned, and he called to me while I was thinking deeply, as though I had been asleep. ² He asked me, "What do you see?"

I replied, "I see a lampstand made completely of gold. There is a small bowl for olive oil at the top, and there are seven small lamps around the bowl, and a place for seven wicks on each lamp. ³ Furthermore, I see two olive trees, one at the right side of the lampstand and one at the left side."

ULB:

4 ¹ Then the angel who was talking with me turned and roused me like a man roused from his sleep. ² He said to me, "What do you see?" I said, "I see a lampstand made entirely of gold, with a bowl on its top. It has seven lamps on it and seven lamp wicks at the top of each lamp. ³ Two olive trees are by it, one on the right side of the bowl and the other on the left side."

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [lampstand](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [gold](#)
- [olive](#)

translationNotes:

- **roused me like a man roused from his sleep** - "caused me to become more alert like a man woken from his sleep"
- **lamp wicks** - the parts of a lamp that are lit on fire
- **the left side** - AT: "the left side of the bowl" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 4:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ I asked the angel who was talking with me, “Sir, what do these things mean?”

⁵ He replied, “Surely you know what they mean.”

I replied, “No, I do not know.”

ULB:

⁴ So I spoke again to the angel who was talking with me. I said, “What do these things mean, my master?” ⁵ The angel who was talking with me answered and said to me, “Do you not know what these things mean?” I said, “No, my master.”

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 4:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Then the angel said to me, “This is the message from Yahweh to you, Zerubbabel, the governor of Judah: ‘You will do what I want you to do, but it will not be by your own strength or power. It will be done by the power of my Spirit,’ says Yahweh, commander of the angel armies.” ⁷ The angel continued to speak to me: “Zerubbabel, you have many difficult matters to handle. They are like high mountains. But it will be as though they became flat land. And you will bring to the new temple the final stone, the highest stone, to complete it. When you set it in place, all the people will shout repeatedly, ‘It is beautiful! May God bless it!’”

ULB:

⁶ So he said to me, ”This is the word of Yahweh to Zerubbabel:

Not by might nor by power, but by my Spirit,

says Yahweh of hosts. ⁷ What are you, great mountain? Before Zerubbabel you will become a plain,

and he will bring out the top stone to shouts of ‘Grace! Grace to it!’”

translationWords:

- [Zerubbabel](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The angel who speaks with Zechariah continues to explain the vision.
- **Zerubbabel** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Not by might nor by power** - Possible meanings are 1) that the words “might” and “power” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Zerubbabel’s strength, or 2) that the word “might” refers to military strength and the word “power” refers to Zerubbabel’s physical ability. AT: “Certainly not by your own strength” or “Not by military strength nor by your own power.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **What are you, great mountain?** - Yahweh asks this question to the mountain to point out that through the Spirit of Yahweh, not even a mountain is strong enough to overpower Zerubbabel. AT: “Great mountain, even you are weak compared to Zerubbabel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **he will bring out the top stone** - The top stone is the last stone placed when building something.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 4:8-11**UDB:**

⁸ Then Yahweh gave me another message. ⁹ He said to me, “Zerubbabel himself laid some of the stones for the foundation of the temple, and he will put some of the last stones in their places.” Then I said to the other men with him, “When that happens, the people will know that it is Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, who has sent me to you.

¹⁰ The people who are mocking the slow way in which they are building the temple again—these same people will be glad when they see Zerubbabel holding a plumb line in his hand.

The seven lamps represent the eyes of Yahweh, who looks back and forth at everything that happens all over the earth.” ¹¹ Then I asked the angel, “What is the meaning of the two olive trees, one on each side of the lampstand?

ULB:

⁸ The word of Yahweh came to me, ⁹ “The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house and his hands will bring it to completion.

Then you will know that Yahweh of hosts has sent me to you. ¹⁰ Who has despised the day of small things?

These people will rejoice and will see the plumb stone in the hand of Zerubbabel.

(These seven lamps are the eyes of Yahweh that roam over the whole earth.)”

¹¹ Then I asked the angel, “What are these two olive trees that stand on the left and the right of the lampstand?”

translationWords:

- olive
- lampstand

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The angel who speaks with Zechariah continues to explain the vision.
- **The word of Yahweh came** - “Yahweh spoke his word.” See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **The hands of Zerubbabel ... his hands will bring it to completion** - Zerubbabel oversees the building of the temple. The building is referred to as “his hands” even though his own hands may not have laid the stones. (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **laid the foundation** - The foundation is base of a building and the first part of the building project. AT: “began building”
- **Who has despised ... small things?** - This question is not asked to receive an answer but to tell the people not to despise “the day of small things”. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the day of small things** - This phrase is a title for the time period where each day simple tasks were done. Together, these small tasks built the temple. The entire time of building is referred to as one day even though it took several years to complete. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **plumb stone** - a stone that is connected to a rope. This is used to determine if the walls of a building are being built straight up or crooked.
- **seven lamps are the eyes of Yahweh** - The seven lamps are symbols for the eyes of Yahweh.
- **the eyes of Yahweh** - The word “eyes” refers to God seeing because eyes are used for seeing. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 4:12-13

UDB:

¹² And what is the meaning of the two olive branches, one alongside each of the gold pipes from which olive oil flows to the lamps?"

¹³ He replied, "Surely you know what they are."

I replied, "No, sir, I do not know."

ULB:

¹² Once more I asked him, "What are these two olive branches beside the two gold pipes that have golden oil pouring out of them?" ¹³ Then he said to me, "Do you not know what these are?" I said, "No, my master."

translationWords:

- olive
- oil
- lord, master, sir

translationNotes:

- **the two gold pipes** - "the two gold spouts"
- **Do you not know what these are?** - "You should know what these are, but you do not." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 4:14**UDB:**

¹⁴ So he said, “They represent the two men whom the Lord who rules the whole earth has appointed.”

ULB:

¹⁴ So he said, “These are the sons of fresh olive oil who stand before the Lord of all the earth.”

translationWords:

- [Lord](#)

translationNotes:

- **the sons of fresh olive oil** - This is a poetic way of saying, “men anointed (that is, chosen).” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **stand before** - This expression stands for the idea of serving. AT: “serve the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 04 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter contains the next two visions. One is about a flying scroll and one is about the basket filled with iniquity. (See: [iniquity](#))

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 5:4, which is an important quotation.

Links:

- [Zechariah 05:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 5:1-2

UDB:

¹ I looked up again, and I saw a scroll that was flying through the air.

² The angel asked me, “What do you see?”

I replied, “I see a flying scroll that is huge, nine meters long and four and a half meters wide.”

ULB:

5 ¹ Then I turned and lifted my eyes, and I saw, behold, a flying scroll! ² The angel said to me, “What do you see?” I answered, “I see a flying scroll, twenty cubits long and ten cubits wide.”

translationWords:

- [scroll](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)

translationNotes:

- **Then I turned** - The word “I” refers to Zechariah.
- **lifted my eyes** - This means to look up at something. He says “I lifted my eyes” because that is the part of the body a person sees with. AT: “looked up” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **behold** - The word “behold” here shows that Zechariah was surprised by what he saw.
- **cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 5:3-4

UDB:

³ Then he said to me, "On this scroll Yahweh has written the words that he is speaking to curse the entire land of Judah. On one side of the scroll it is written that every thief will be banished. On the other side it is written that everyone who tells a lie when he is calling on Yahweh to witness that he is telling the truth will also be banished from the country. ⁴ The Commander of the angel armies says, 'I will send this scroll to the places where thieves live and to the houses of those who use my name when they call on me to witness that they are telling the truth. This scroll will stay in their houses until those houses and all their wood and stones are destroyed.'"

ULB:

³ Then he said to me, "This is the curse that goes out over the surface of the whole land, for every thief will be cut off from now on based on what it says on the one side, while everyone who swears a false oath will be cut off based on what it says on the other side, according to their words.

⁴ "I will send it out—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts—

so it will enter into the house of the thief and into the house of the one that swears falsely by my name.

It will remain in his house and consume its timber and stones."

translationWords:

- curse, cursed
- face
- cut off
- oath, swear, swear by
- send, send out, sent
- declare, declaration
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- name
- consume

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues to speak with Zechariah.
- **based on what it says on the one side** - "based on what the scroll has written on one side"
- **what it says on the other side** - "what the scroll has written on the other side"
- **according to their words** - The phrase "their words" refers to what was said in their oath. AT: "according to what they said" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

- **I will send it out** - The word “it” refers to the curse.
- **this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **the house** - This refers to the man’s family and everything they own. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **of the one that swears** - “of the man that swears”
- **timber** - wood used for building

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 5:5-7

UDB:

⁵ Then the angel who had been talking to me came closer to me and said, “Look up and see what is coming!”

⁶ I asked him, “What is it?”

He replied, “It is a big barrel for measuring grain. But it contains a record of the sins that everyone in this nation has committed.”

⁷ Then the angel lifted the barrel’s cover, which was made of lead. There was a woman sitting inside the barrel!

ULB:

⁵ Then the angel who was speaking with me went out and said to me, “Raise your eyes and see what is coming!” ⁶ I said, “What is it?” He said, “This is a basket containing an ephah that is coming. This is their iniquity in the whole land.”^[1]Some ancient and most modern versions have *their iniquity* . The Hebrew text has *their eye* , but this is widely thought to be an error. ⁷ Then a lead covering was lifted off the basket and there was a woman under it sitting in it!

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [iniquity](#)

translationNotes:

- **Raise your eyes** - This phrase commands a person to look up by referring to their eyes. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **a lead covering** - This refers to a heavy cover. Lead is a heavy metal.
- **there was a woman under it sitting in it** - A woman could not literally fit inside a basket of this size. In Zechariah’s vision though, so did fit in the basket. Often in visions the sizes of things are exaggerated. Both the basket and the woman are symbolic and represent other things.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 5:8-9

UDB:

⁸ The angel said, “She represents the wicked things that people do.” Then he pushed her back into the barrel and closed the very heavy lid again.

⁹ Then I looked up and saw two women in front of me. They were flying toward us, with their wings spread out in the wind. Their wings were large, like storks’ wings. They lifted the barrel up into the sky.

ULB:

⁸ The angel said, “This is Wickedness!” He threw her back inside the basket, and he threw the lead cover over its opening. ⁹ I lifted my eyes and saw two women coming toward me, and wind was in their wings—for they had wings like a stork’s wings. They lifted up the basket between earth and heaven.

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **This is Wickedness** - The woman represents wickedness. AT: “Her name is Wickedness” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **and wind was in their wings** - This phrase describes how the women used their wings to be carried by the wind and fly. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **they had wings like a stork’s wings** - The women had wings that looked like stork’s wings. A stork is a type of large bird that has a wingspan of 2 to 4 meters. (See: [Simile](#))
- **between earth and heaven** - The basket was lifted up into the sky. It says “between earth and heaven” to draw attention to them and show where the basket was in relationship to them. (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 5:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ I asked the angel who had been talking to me, “Where are they taking that barrel?”

¹¹ He replied, “They are taking it to Babylonia to build a temple for it. When the temple is finished, they will set the barrel there on a pedestal for people to worship it.”

ULB:

¹⁰ So I said to the angel who was talking to me, “Where are they taking the basket?” ¹¹ He said to me, “To build a temple in the land of Shinar for it, so that when the temple is ready, the basket will be set there on its prepared base.”

translationWords:

- [Shinar](#)

translationNotes:

- **Where are they taking the basket?** - “Where are the women taking the barrel?”
- **so that when the temple is ready ... on its prepared base** - “and when the temple is ready, the barrel will be set in the place prepared for it”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 05 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is written mainly in prose and tells the last vision of the four chariots in the first part of the chapter.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 6:12-15, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Crown

The second part of the chapter is about a crown made for the high priest. This is an actual person, but the meaning of the word “branch” should be translated as his name. (See: [high priest](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Meaning of the visions

The visions are stated and even when the prophet asked for an explanation, their true meaning is often obscure. This uncertainty should remain in your translation. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Zechariah 06:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 6:1-4**UDB:**

¹ I looked up again, and I saw four chariots coming toward me. They were coming between two mountains that were made of bronze. ² The first chariot was pulled by red horses, the second chariot was pulled by black horses, ³ the third chariot was pulled by white horses, and the fourth chariot was pulled by spotted gray horses. ⁴ I asked the angel who had been speaking to me, “Sir, what do those chariots mean?”

ULB:

6 ¹ Then I turned and lifted my eyes and I saw four chariots coming out from between two mountains; and the two mountains were made of bronze. ² The first chariot had red horses, the second chariot had black horses, ³ the third chariot had white horses, and the fourth chariot had spotted gray horses. ⁴ So I answered and said to the angel who talked with me, “What are these, my master?”

translationWords:

- [chariot](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [horse](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)

translationNotes:

- **lifted my eyes** - This means to look up at something. AT: “looked up” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **two mountains were made of bronze** - “two mountains were bronze” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **first chariot ... second chariot** - “chariot 1 ... chariot 2”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 6:5-6

UDB:

⁵ The angel replied, "These chariots and their horses represent the four winds going out from heaven; they have come from standing in the presence of the Lord who controls the entire earth. They will go across the sky in four directions. ⁶ The chariot pulled by black horses will go north, the one pulled by white horses will go west, and the one pulled by spotted gray horses will go south."

ULB:

⁵ The angel answered and said to me, "These are the four winds of heaven that go out from the place where they were standing before the Lord of all the earth. ⁶ The one with the black horses is going out to the north country; the white horses are going out to the west country; and the spotted gray horses are going out to the south country."

translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [horse](#)

translationNotes:

- **These are the four winds of heaven** - The angel explains that the chariots with horses are symbols for the 4 winds of heaven.
- **four winds** - The word "winds" refers to the four directions: north, east, south, and west. However, some modern versions interpret this Hebrew expression to mean "four spirits."
- **the white horses are going out to the west country** - Some modern versions interpret this Hebrew phrase to mean "the white horses are going out after them."

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 6:7-8

UDB:

⁷ When those powerful horses left, they were eager to go throughout the world. As they were leaving, the angel said to them, “Go throughout the world and see what is happening!” So they left to do that.

⁸ Then the angel called to me and said, “Look, the chariots that have gone north will mollify the Spirit of Yahweh by punishing the people in that region.”

ULB:

⁷ These strong horses went out and sought to go and roam over the earth, so the angel said, “Go and roam over the earth!” and they left for all the earth. ⁸ Then he called out to me and spoke to me and said, “Look at the ones that are going out to the north country; they will appease my spirit concerning the north country.”

translationWords:

- [horse](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)

translationNotes:

- **Look at the ones** - “Look at the black horses”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 6:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Then Yahweh gave me another message. ¹⁰ He said, "Today Heldai, Tobijah, and Jedaiah will be bringing some silver and gold from the people who were exiled in Babylon. As soon as they arrive, go to the house of Josiah son of Zephaniah. ¹¹ Take some of that silver and gold from them and make a crown. Then put it on the head of Jehozadak's son Joshua, the high priest.

ULB:

⁹ So the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹⁰ "Take an offering from the exiles—from Heldai, Tobijah, and Jedaiah—and go this same day and take it into the house of Josiah son of Zephaniah, who has come from Babylon. ¹¹ Then take the silver and gold, make a crown and set it upon the head of Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- sacrifice, offering
- exile, the Exile
- house
- Josiah
- Zephaniah
- Babylon, Babylonian
- silver
- gold
- crown, to crown
- Joshua
- high priest

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Heldai, Tobijah, and Jedaiah ... Jehozadak** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Then take the silver and gold, make a crown** - AT: Then use the silver and the gold to make a crown. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Joshua son of Jehozadak** - This is not the same man who was Moses' helper; this is the high priest from the book of Haggai.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 6:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Tell him that I, the Commander of the angel armies, say that the man who is called the Branch will come. He will leave the place where he is now, and he will supervise those who build my temple. ¹³ He is the one who will tell those who will build my temple what to do. He will wear royal clothing and he will sit on his throne and rule. He will also be a priest sitting on his throne, and there will be peace between the two roles.

ULB:

¹² Speak to him and say, 'Yahweh of hosts says this:

This man, his name is Branch! He will grow up where he is
and will then build the temple of Yahweh!

¹³ It is he who will build the temple of Yahweh and will raise up its splendor;
then he will sit and rule on his throne.

He will be a priest upon his throne and the understanding of peace will exist
between the two.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- temple
- splendor
- ruler, rulers, rule
- throne
- priest, priesthood
- understand, understanding
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **Speak to him and say** - AT: "Yahweh told the angel to speak to Zechariah and say"
- **his name is Branch** - The angel of Yahweh gives this name to the new king Joshua. Translate this name as you did in 3:8.
- **He will grow up** - The phrase "grow up" is a word picture of branch beginning to sprout. AT: "He will sprout"
- **raise up its splendor** - Possible meanings: 1) "increase the temple's splendor" or 2) "lift up and put on the temple's splendor for himself like a person might put on clothing"

- **the understanding of peace will exist between the two** - AT: “his roles of king and priest will be united” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 6:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ You must place a crown in my temple to remind people of what Heldai, Tobijah, Jedaiah, and Josiah son of Zephaniah did for them.” ¹⁵ People who are living far away will come and help to build Yahweh’s temple. When that happens, you people will know that Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, have sent me to you people. That will happen if all of you faithfully obey Yahweh, your God.

ULB:

¹⁴ A crown will be placed in the temple of Yahweh to honor Heldai, Tobijah, and Jedaiah and as a memorial to the generosity of the son of Zephaniah. ¹⁵ Then those who are far off will come and build the temple of Yahweh, so you will know that Yahweh of hosts has sent me to you; for this will happen if you truly listen to the voice of Yahweh your God!”

translationWords:

- crown, to crown
- temple
- memorial, memorial offering
- Zephaniah
- know, knowledge, make known
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- send, send out, sent
- voice
- God

translationNotes:

- **A crown will be placed in the temple of Yahweh** - AT: “I will place a crown in my temple” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **A crown** - The word “crown” refers to a king as a king would wear a crown. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **placed in the temple of Yahweh** - This phrase refers to the king also being a priest, as a priest serves in the temple.
- **Heldai, Tobijah, and Jedaiah** - See how these names were translated in **6:10**.
- **as a memorial to the generosity of the son of Zephaniah** - Some modern versions interpret this phrase as “as a memorial to Hen, son of Zephaniah” or “as a memorial to the one who is gracious, the son of Zephaniah.” Also, some modern versions interpret the name “Hen” as meaning the name “Josiah.”

- **those who are far off** - This refers to the Israelites who remain in Babylon. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **so you will know** - The word “you” refers to the people of Israel.
- **truly listen** - “listen sincerely”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 06 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter starts occurs about two years after the previous chapter and is written in prose.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 7:4-14, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Fasting

This chapter discusses fasting. People were asking the same questions as those from previous generations. The Israelites were asking these same questions before they were exiled from their land.

Links:

- [Zechariah 07:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 7:1-3**UDB:**

¹ When Darius had been the emperor for almost four years, on the fourth day of Kislev (which was the ninth month in their calendar), Yahweh gave me another message. ² The people of the city of Bethel sent two men, Sharezer and Regem Melech, along with some other men, to the temple of Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, to request that Yahweh be kind to them. ³ They also asked the priests at Yahweh's temple and the prophets this question: "For many years, during the fifth month and during the seventh month of each year, we have mourned and fasted. Should we continue to do that?"

ULB:

⁷ ¹ When King Darius had been ruler for four years, on the fourth day of Kislev (which was the ninth month), the word of Yahweh came to Zechariah. ² The people of Bethel had sent Sharezer and Regem Melech and their men to beg before the face of Yahweh. ³ They spoke to the priests who were at the house of Yahweh of hosts and to the prophets; they said, "Should I mourn in the fifth month by means of a fast, as I have done these many years?"

translationWords:

- king
- Darius
- biblical time: year
- biblical time: day
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Zechariah (OT)
- Bethel
- beg, beggar
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- priest, priesthood
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- mourn, mourning
- fast

translationNotes:

- **When King Darius had been ruler for four years** - "in the fourth year since Darius became king" (See: **Ordinal Numbers**)

- **on the fourth day of Kislev (which was the ninth month)** - “Kislev” is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourth day is near the end of November on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came** - “Yahweh spoke his word.” See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Sharezer and Regem Melech** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#)).
- **they said, ”Should I mourn ... years?** - The word “they” refers to Sharezer and Regem Melech.
- **in the fifth month** - The Jewish people fasted during a part of the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar because this is when the Babylonians destroyed the temple in Jerusalem. The fifth month is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 7:4-7**UDB:**

⁴ Then Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, gave me a message. ⁵ He told me to say this to the priests and, in fact, to everyone in the whole land: "Tell me whom you were honoring when you did not eat but went around in dirty clothing. You were not really honoring me, were you? ⁶ And when you feasted at my temple, you did it just to have a good time; you did not really intend to honor me, did you? ⁷ This is exactly what I kept telling the former prophets to proclaim to the people, when the people in Jerusalem and the nearby towns were many and prosperous, and when people also lived in the southern Judean wilderness, and in the foothills to the west."

ULB:

⁴ So the word of Yahweh of hosts came to me and said,

⁵ "Speak to all the people of the land and to the priests and say,

'When you fasted and mourned in the fifth and in the seventh month

for these seventy years, were you truly fasting for me?

⁶ When you ate and drank, did you not eat and drink for yourselves?

⁷ Were these not the same words that Yahweh proclaimed by the mouth of the former prophets,

when you still inhabited Jerusalem and the surrounding cities in prosperity and were settled in the Negev, and the foothills to the west?"

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- priest, priesthood
- fast
- mourn, mourning
- biblical time: year
- word
- proclaim, proclamation
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jerusalem
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- Negev

translationNotes:

- **in the fifth** - AT: “in the fifth month” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))
- **in the seventh month** - The Jews mourned during a part of the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar because in this month the remaining Jews in Jerusalem fled to Egypt after the murder of Gedaliah, whom the king of Babylon appointed as governor over Judah. The seventh month is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **for these seventy years** - The people of Israel had been slaves in Babylon for 70 years. (See: [Numbers](#))
- **When you ate and drank** - This phrase refers to when they ate and drank at feasts to honor how Yahweh had provided for them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **were you truly fasting for me?** - This question is used to accuse the people of Israel for not honoring Yahweh when they fasted. AT: “you did not fast to honor me” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **did you not eat and drink for yourselves?** - This question is used to accuse the people of Israel who celebrated the feasts for not honoring God with their feasting. AT: “it was for yourselves that you ate and drank” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Yahweh proclaimed by the mouth of the former prophets** - Zechariah refers to the former prophets by referring to the part of their body that spoke Yahweh’s message. AT: “Yahweh proclaimed through the former prophets” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Were these not the same words ... to the west?** - This question can be written as a statement. “These were exactly the same words ... to the west.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **inhabited** - “lived in”
- **foothills** - These are the small hills that are before you get to the mountains.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 7:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ Yahweh gave another message to me: ⁹ "Tell the people that this is what Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, says: 'I told you to do what is just, to act kindly and mercifully toward each other, in order to honor my covenant with you. ¹⁰ I told you not to oppress widows or orphans or foreigners or poor people. I said to not even think about doing evil to anyone else.'"

ULB:

⁸ The word of Yahweh came to Zechariah and said,

⁹ "Yahweh of hosts says this, 'Judge with true justice, covenant faithfulness, and mercy. Let each man do this for his brother.

¹⁰ About the widow and orphan, the foreigner, and the poor person—do not oppress them, and let none of you plot any harm against another in your heart.'

translationWords:

- judge, judgment
- true, truth, come true
- just, justice, justly
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- mercy, merciful
- brother
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- heart

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Let each man do this** - The word "this" refers to how a person should judge.
- **widow** - a woman whose husband has died
- **orphan** - a child whose parents have died
- **foreigner** - someone who travels from his own land to a different land
- **let none of you plot any harm against another in your heart** - "you must not make plans to do evil"

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 7:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ But the people refused to pay attention to what Yahweh had said. They refused to cooperate with him; they refused to listen to what he said. ¹² He had given these messages for his Spirit to repeat to the prophets in earlier times. The prophets were meant to speak these messages to the people. But the people were very stubborn; they would not listen to the law of Moses or to any message from God. So Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, became very angry with them.

ULB:

¹¹ But they refused to pay attention and set their shoulders stubbornly. They stopped up their ears so they would not hear. ¹² They made their hearts as hard as rock so they would not hear the law or the words of Yahweh of hosts. He had sent these messages to the people by his Spirit in earlier times, by the mouth of the prophets. But the people refused to listen, so Yahweh of hosts was very angry with them.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [angry, anger](#)

translationNotes:

- **set their shoulders stubbornly** - AT: “they were like cattle that refused to be yoked” or “they were like cattle that refused to obey” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They stopped up their ears** - “They closed up their ears”
- **They made their hearts as hard as rock** - AT: “They made up their minds to reject Yahweh’s messages” (See: [Simile](#))
- **by the mouth of the prophets** - AT: “through the words of the prophets”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 7:13-14

UDB:

¹³ In those times, when Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, called to the people, they refused to listen. So he said, "In exactly the same way, I will refuse to listen when they call to me. ¹⁴ And I will scatter them among many nations, nations that they have never been to before. I will scatter them as a storm scatters leaves. After they are gone, their own land will be empty, with no one living there. No one will travel through it and no one will come back to it, because they have turned it, their most pleasant land, into a wilderness."

ULB:

¹³ It happened that when he called, they did not listen. In the same way," said Yahweh of hosts, "they will call out to me, but I will not listen. ¹⁴ For I will scatter them with a whirlwind to all the nations that they have not seen, and the land will be desolate after them. For no one will pass through the land or return to it since the people have made their delightful land into a wasteland."

translationWords:

- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [nation](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)

translationNotes:

- **I will scatter them with a whirlwind** - AT: "I will scatter them as a whirlwind scatters leaves" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **whirlwind** - a very strong wind that spins as it goes, scattering things all around

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 07 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a series of sayings from Yahweh of hosts. Each saying is an encouraging note for those returning from the exile to the land of Judah and Jerusalem. (See: [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#))

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 8:2-13, which is an extended quotation.

Links:

- [Zechariah 08:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 8:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "This is what I, Yahweh the Commander of the angel armies, say: I love the people of Jerusalem; I love them very much, and I am very angry with their enemies.

³ So this is what I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, say: Some day I will return to Mount Zion and I will live there. At that time, Jerusalem will be called The City of Faithful People, and Mount Zion will be called The Mountain that Belongs to Yahweh."

ULB:

8 ¹ The word of Yahweh of hosts came to me and said, ² "Yahweh of hosts says this:

I am passionate for Zion with great zeal and I am passionate for her with great anger!

³ Yahweh of hosts says this:

I will return to Zion and will live in the midst of Jerusalem,

for Jerusalem will be called The City of Truth and the mountain of Yahweh of hosts will be called The Holy Mountain!

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- Zion, Mount Zion
- zeal, zealous
- Jerusalem
- call, calling, called, call out
- true, truth, come true
- holy, holiness

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh of hosts came to me and said** - Yahweh of hosts said to me
- **I am passionate for her with great anger** - AT: "I am filled with anger for the sake of Zion"
- **the mountain of Yahweh of hosts** - This refers to Mount Zion.
- **The Holy Mountain** - Here "Holy" means "Belonging to Yahweh."

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, also says this: "Some day old men and old women will again sit along the streets of Jerusalem, each of them holding a cane because of their being very old. ⁵ And the city streets will be full of boys and girls playing."

ULB:

⁴ Yahweh of hosts says this:

Old men and old women will once again be in the streets of Jerusalem,
and every person will need a staff in his hand because he has grown so old.

⁵ The streets of the city will be full of boys and girls playing in them.

translationWords:

- [staff](#)

translationNotes:

- **be in the streets of Jerusalem** - "be living in Jerusalem"
- **in his hand because he has grown so old** - Having the opportunity to grow old is a sign of peace and prosperity.
- **The streets of the city will be full** - The public areas of the city will be full of people in their normal activities.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, also says this: “When those things happen, it will seem marvelous to the people who are still alive, but it certainly will not seem marvelous to me!”

⁷ Yahweh also says this: “I will bring my people back from the land to the east—Babylonia—and from the land to the west—Egypt—to which they had to go. ⁸ I will bring them back to Judah, and they will again live in Jerusalem. They will again worship me as my people, and I will be their God. I will be faithful to them and act toward them in a just manner.”

ULB:

⁶ Yahweh of hosts says this:

If something seems impossible in the eyes of the remnant of this people in those days,

should it also seem impossible in my eyes?—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

⁷ Yahweh of hosts says this:

Behold, I am about to rescue my people from the land of the sunrise and from the land of the setting sun!

⁸ For I will bring them back,

and they will live in the midst of Jerusalem,

so they will again be my people,

and I will be their God in truth and in righteousness!

translationWords:

- remnant
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- declare, declaration
- people of God, my people
- true, truth, come true
- righteous, righteousness

translationNotes:

- **If something seems impossible in the eyes of** - “If something does not appear to be possible to”
- **the remnant of this people** - AT: “the people of Judah who survive”

- **should it also seem impossible in my eyes?** - God is asking this question in order to persuade his people to trust in his promises. AT: “it will surely be possible for me!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **I am about to rescue my people** - “I am about to rescue my people of Judah who went into exile” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, also says this: "When the foundation for my temple was laid, there were prophets there who gave messages from me. Some of you people heard what those prophets said. So be brave while you are building the temple, in order that you may finish building it. ¹⁰ Before you started to rebuild the temple, your fields gave no crops, no return for either man or beast working in them. And people were afraid to go anywhere because I had caused people to be against each other.

ULB:

⁹ Yahweh of hosts says this:

You who now continue to hear the same words

that came from the prophets' mouths

when the foundation of my house was laid—this house of mine, Yahweh of hosts:

Strengthen your hands so that the temple can be built.

¹⁰ For before those days

no crops were gathered in by anyone,

there was no profit for either man or beast,

and there was no peace from enemies for anyone going or coming.

I had set every person each against his neighbor.

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- foundation, founded
- house
- temple
- peace, peaceful
- neighbor

translationNotes:

- **when the foundation of my house was laid** - AT: "when the foundation of my temple was set in place" to "when you were building the foundation of my house" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Strengthen your hands** - AT: "Work hard" (See: **Idiom**)

- **For before those days** - AT: “Before you started to rebuild the temple”
- **no crops were gathered in** - AT: “there were no crops to harvest”
- **there was no profit for either man or beast** - It was useless for people and their animals to farm the land, because they got no food from it.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ But now I will act differently toward you people who are still alive, differently than I did previously. That is what I, Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, say.

¹² From now on, I will give you peace. Your grapevines will produce grapes, and good crops will grow in your fields. There will be rain from the sky. I will always give all these things to you people who are still alive.

ULB:

¹¹ But now it will not be as in former days,
I will be with the remnant of this people
—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts.

¹² For seeds of peace will be sown;
the climbing vine will give its fruit and the earth will give its produce;
the skies will give their dew,
for I will make the remnant of this people inherit all these things.

translationWords:

- peace, peaceful
- sow, sower, plant
- vine
- fruit, fruitful
- earth, earthly
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

translationNotes:

- **as in former days** - “as in the past;”
- **I will be with the remnant of this people** - AT: “Now I will bless these people” or “Now I will treat these people kindly”
- **seeds of peace will be sown** - AT: “I will make the people be at peace.”
- **this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **the earth will give its produce** - AT: “there will be good harvests in the fields”

- **the skies will give their dew** - Dew was often a symbol of prosperity. AT: “there will be much rain”
- **inherit all these things** - AT: “have all these things for all time”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ You people of Judah and Israel, the people of other nations think of you when they speak of what a curse means. But I will rescue you, and I will give you many good things. So do not be afraid; work hard to finish building the temple.”

¹⁴ Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, also says this: ”When your ancestors caused me to become very angry, I did not change my mind about that. Instead, I indeed punished them. ¹⁵ But now I will do something different. I am planning to do good things to the people of Jerusalem and other towns in Judah again. So do not be afraid.

ULB:

¹³ You were an example to the other nations of a curse,
house of Judah and house of Israel.
So I will rescue you and you will be a blessing.
Do not be afraid; let your hands be strong!

¹⁴ For Yahweh of hosts says this: Just as I planned to do harm to you when your ancestors provoked my anger—says Yahweh of hosts—and did not relent, ¹⁵ so also I will plan in these days to do good again to Jerusalem and the house of Judah! Do not fear!

translationWords:

- nation
- curse, cursed
- Judah
- house
- bless, blessed, blessing
- angry, anger
- Jerusalem
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **You were an example to the other nations of a curse** - AT: “When I punished you, the other nations learned what happens when I curse someone”
- **house of Judah and house of Israel** - “people of Judah and Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **let your hands be strong!** - AT: “work hard” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **do harm to you** - “punish you”

- **provoked my anger** - “angered me”
- **did not relent** - “did not decide to punish them less”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ These are the things that you should do: You should always tell the truth to each other. In the courts, your judges must make decisions according to what is correct and fair. ¹⁷ Do not plan to do evil things to others, and do not approve of swearing false accusations against others. I hate all those things.”

ULB:

¹⁶ These are the things that you must do: Speak truth, every person with his neighbor. Judge with truth, justice, and peace in your gates. ¹⁷ Do not plan to do evil within your heart against one another, and do not love false oaths—for these are the things I hate!—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- neighbor
- judge, judgment
- just, justice, justly
- gate, gate bar
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- heart
- oath, swear, swear by

translationNotes:

- **that you must do** - “You” refers to the people of Judah.
- **Speak truth, every person with his neighbor** - AT: “Tell the truth to every person”
- **Judge with truth, justice, and peace in your gates** - AT: “Judge disputes justly in your places of judgment so that people can live in peace with each other”
- **do not love false oaths** - AT: “do not approve when people tell lies in court cases”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, spoke to me again. ¹⁹ This is what he said: “The times when you people of Judah abstain from food during the fourth, fifth, seventh, and tenth months of each year will become times when you celebrate pleasant and joyful festivals instead. But you must want to speak truthfully and to be peaceful.”

ULB:

¹⁸ Then the word of Yahweh of hosts came to me and said, ¹⁹ ”Yahweh of hosts says this: The fasts of the fourth month, the fifth month, the seventh month, and the tenth month will become times of joy, gladness, and happy festivals for the house of Judah! Therefore love truth and peace!

translationWords:

- [fast](#)
- [joy, joyful](#)
- [festival](#)

translationNotes:

- **Then the word of Yahweh of hosts came to me** - “Me” refers to Zechariah.
- **The fasts of the fourth month** - The Jews mourned during a part of the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar because this is when the Babylonians broke through the walls of Jerusalem. The fourth month is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **fifth month** - See how you translated this in [7:3](#).
- **seventh month** - See how you translated this in [7:5](#).
- **tenth month** - The Jews mourned during a part of the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar because this is when the Babylonians began their siege against Jerusalem. The tenth month is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, also says this: "Some day people from many people groups and foreign cities will come here to Jerusalem. ²¹ People from one city will go to the people in another city and say, 'Let us go together to Jerusalem to worship Yahweh and request him to bless us; we ourselves are going.' ²² And people from many people groups and from powerful nations will come to Jerusalem to worship Yahweh and request him to bless them."

ULB:

²⁰ Yahweh of hosts says this: People will come again, even those who are living in many different cities. ²¹ The inhabitants of one city will go to another city and say, "Let us quickly go to beg before the face of Yahweh and to seek Yahweh of hosts! We ourselves are also going. ²² Many people and mighty nations will come to seek Yahweh of hosts in Jerusalem and beg for the favor of Yahweh!"

translationWords:

- [beg, beggar](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:

- **People will come again** - "People will come to Jerusalem again"
- **Many people and mighty nations will come** - "Many people will come, including people from large nations"

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 8:23

UDB:

²³ Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, also says this: “At that time, this is what will happen everywhere: For every Jewish person, there will be ten foreigners, people who speak a different language, who will come and grab the fringe of his robe. They will say to him, ‘We have heard people say that God is with you. So allow us to go with you to Jerusalem to worship him.’ People from every nation and language will do this.”

ULB:

²³ Yahweh of hosts says this: In those days ten men from every language and nation will grasp the hem of your robe and say, ‘Let us go with you, for we have heard that God is with you!’”

translationWords:

- [robe](#)

translationNotes:

- **will grasp the hem of your robe** - “will grasp your clothes to get your attention” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Let us go with you** - “Please let us travel to Jerusalem with you”
- **God is with you** - “God is with you people”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 08 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 08 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is written mainly in prose about the cities and peoples around where Israel stood as a country until the exile.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 9:9-10, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prophecies against other nations

The first two verses show that the prophecy concerns neighboring countries. Hamath, Damascus, Tyre and Sidon are cities in areas that were near Israel. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Zechariah 09:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 9:1-2

UDB:

¹ This is another message that I received from Yahweh about the region of Hadrach and the city of Damascus. For Yahweh carefully watches what everyone does, including the people of the tribes of Israel. ² This message is also about the people in the region of Hamath near to Damascus, and about the people in the cities of Tyre and Sidon, people who think they are very wise.

ULB:

9 ¹ This is a declaration of Yahweh's word concerning the land of Hadrach and Damascus. For Yahweh's eye is on all mankind, and also on all the tribes of Israel. ² This declaration also concerns Hamath, which borders on Damascus, and it concerns Tyre and Sidon, though they are very wise.

translationWords:

- [declare, declaration](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **This is a declaration of Yahweh's word concerning** - AT: "This is Yahweh's message about"
- **the land of Hadrach and Damascus** - AT: "the people of the land of Hadrach and the city Damascus (See: [How to Translate Names](#)) (See: [Metonymy](#))"
- **For Yahweh's eye is on all mankind** - AT: "For Yahweh is watching every person" However, many modern versions translate this passage as "mankind's eyes and those of all the tribes of Israel are on Yahweh."
- **Hamath** - AT: "the people of the land of Hamath" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Tyre and Sidon** - AT: "the people of Tyre and Sidon" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **though they are very wise** - Zechariah probably did not really mean that the people of Hamath were wise. AT: "though they think they are very wise" (See: [Irony](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 09 General Notes](#)

- **Zechariah 09 Translation Questions**

Zechariah 9:3-4

UDB:

³ The people in Tyre have built a high wall around their city. They piled up huge amounts of silver and gold like other people pile up soil when they dig in the streets. ⁴ But I, Yahweh, will make them lose everything, including their ships in which their men fight on the sea. Their city will burn to the ground.

ULB:

³ Tyre has built herself a stronghold and heaped up silver like dust and refined gold like mud in the streets. ⁴ Look! The Lord will dispossess her and destroy her strength on the sea, so she will be devoured by fire.

translationWords:

- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fire](#)

translationNotes:

- **built herself a stronghold** - Here the city of Tyre is pictured as a woman. AT: “built a strong fortress” or “built a high wall” (See [Personification](#))
- **heaped up silver like dust and refined gold like mud in the streets** - AT: “accumulated silver and gold as much as soil in the streets” (See [Hyperbole](#))
- **Look! The Lord will dispossess her** - AT: “Pay attention! The Lord will take away Tyre’s possessions”
- **and destroy her strength on the sea** - AT: “and destroy Tyre’s ships in which men fight on the sea” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **so she will be devoured by fire** - AT: “and burn the city to the ground”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 9:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ The people in the city of Ashkelon will see that happen, and they will become very afraid. The people in the city of Gaza will shake because they are terrified, and the people in the city of Ekron will shake too, because they no longer hope to escape enemies. The king of Gaza will die; No one will live any longer in Ashkelon. ⁶ Yahweh says, "Foreigners will occupy the city of Ashdod. I will no longer allow the people in all those cities of Philistia to be proud. ⁷ I will no longer allow them to eat meat that still has blood in it, and I will forbid them to eat food that they offered to idols. At that time, the people in the region of Philistia who survive will worship me; they will become like a clan in Judah. The people of the city of Ekron will become part of my people, as the people of the city of Jebus did when the Israelites conquered them.

ULB:

⁵ Ashkelon will see and be afraid! Gaza also will tremble greatly! Ekron, her hopes will be disappointed! The king will perish from Gaza, and Ashkelon shall no longer be inhabited! ⁶ Strangers will make their homes in Ashdod, and I will cut off the pride of the Philistines. ⁷ For I will remove their blood from their mouths and their abominations from between their teeth. Then they will become a remnant for our God like a clan in Judah, and Ekron will become like the Jebusites.

translationWords:

- Ashkelon
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Gaza
- Ekron
- king
- perish, perishing, perishable
- Ashdod, Azotus
- cut off
- Philistines
- blood
- abomination, abominable
- remnant
- God
- clan
- Judah
- Jebusites, Jebus

translationNotes:

- **will see** - “will see Tyre be destroyed”
- **Strangers will make their homes in Ashdod** - AT: “Foreigners will take over Ashdod and live there”
- **and I will cut off the pride of the Philistines** - AT: “I will make the Philistines to be proud of themselves no longer”
- **I will remove their blood from their mouths and their abominations from between their teeth** - These refer to meat with blood in it, and to meat offered to idols. The UDB makes this explicit. AT: “I will no longer allow them to eat meat that still has blood in it, and I will forbid them to eat food that they offered to idols” (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 9:8**UDB:**

⁸ I will protect my land, and I will not allow any enemy soldiers to enter it. No enemies will harm my people again, because I myself will be watching over them carefully.

ULB:

⁸ I will camp around my land against enemy armies so no one can pass through or return, for no oppressor will pass any more through it. For now I will watch over my land with my own eyes!

translationWords:

- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [watch, watchman](#)

translationNotes:

- **I will camp around my land** - God is speaking about himself as if he were an army. AT: “I will protect my land” (UDB). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 9:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Rejoice very much, you people of Jerusalem and shout joyfully, because your king will be coming to you. He is righteous and victorious; he will be gentle, and he will be riding on a donkey, on a young female donkey. ¹⁰ I will destroy the chariots in the region of Ephraim that are used in war and all the horses in Jerusalem that they take into battle. I will break all the bows they use in wars. Your king will proclaim that he will cause things to go well and peacefully among the nations. He will rule the area from the Mediterranean Sea to the Dead Sea, and from the Euphrates River to the most distant places on the earth.

ULB:

⁹ Shout with great joy, daughter of Zion! Shout with happiness, daughter of Jerusalem!

Behold! Your king is coming to you with righteousness

and is rescuing you. He is humble and is riding on a donkey, on the colt of a donkey.

¹⁰ Then I will cut off the chariot from Ephraim and the horse from Jerusalem, and the bow will be cut off from battle; for he will speak peace to the nations, and his dominion will be from sea to sea, and from the River to the ends of the earth!

translationWords:

- Zion, Mount Zion
- Jerusalem
- righteous, righteousness
- humble, humility
- donkey, mule
- chariot
- Ephraim
- horse
- bow and arrow
- cut off
- peace, peaceful
- nation
- dominion
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **Shout with great joy, daughter of Zion! Shout with happiness, daughter of Jerusalem!** - These two sentences mean the same thing and intensify the command to rejoice. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **daughter of Zion ... daughter of Jerusalem** - “Zion” is the same as “Jerusalem.” The prophet speaks of the city as if it is a daughter. See how you translated “daughter of Zion” in [2:10](#).
- **on a donkey, on the colt of a donkey** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and refer to one animal. The second phrase clarifies that this is a young donkey. AT: “on a young donkey.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **cut off the chariot from Ephraim** - AT: “destroy the chariots in Israel that are used for battle”
- **the horse from Jerusalem** - AT: “the warhorses in Jerusalem”
- **the bow will be cut off from battle** - Here the bow represents all weapons used in warfare. AT: “all weapons of war will be destroyed” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **for he will speak peace to the nations** - Here the action of announcing peace represents the action of making peace. AT: “for your king will bring peace to the nations” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **his dominion will be from sea to sea, and from the River to the ends of the earth!** - “his kingdom will be over all the earth!” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 9:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ As for you, my people of Jerusalem, because of the blood that flowed when I made my covenant with you, I will free your people whom they took to other countries, where it was as though they were prisoners in a waterless pit. ¹² You people who were prisoners in those countries who still believe that I will help you, return to Judah, for I will defend you there. Today I declare that I will give you two blessings for each of the troubles that you have experienced. ¹³ I will cause Judah to be like my bow, and I will cause Israel to be like my arrow. I will enable you young men of Jerusalem to fight against the soldiers of Greece; you will be like a warrior's sword."

ULB:

¹¹ As for you, because of the blood of my covenant with you, I will set your prisoners free from the pit where there is no water. ¹² Return to the stronghold, prisoners of hope! Even today I am declaring that I will return double to you, ¹³ for I have bent Judah as my bow. I have filled my quiver with Ephraim. I have roused your sons, Zion, against your sons, Greece, and have made you, Zion, like a warrior's sword!

translationWords:

- blood
- covenant
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- pit
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- hope
- bow and arrow
- son, son of
- Greece
- sword

translationNotes:

- **As for you** - Here "you" refers to the people of Israel.
- **the pit where there is no water** - This pit represents the exile. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Return to the stronghold** - AT: "Come back to your nation where you will be safe"
- **prisoners of hope** - This expression refers to the Israelites in exile who were still trusting in God to rescue them.
- **bent Judah as my bow** - The people of Judah are referred to as if they were a bow carried by God into battle. AT: "I will use the people of Judah to fight against the people of Greece" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **filled my quiver with Ephraim** - The people of Israel, the northern kingdom, are referred to as if they were arrows that God would shoot at his enemies. A quiver is a bag that holds a soldier's arrows. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I have roused your sons, Zion, against your sons, Greece** - God is speaking to the people of two different nations at the same time. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 9:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ One day Yahweh will appear in the sky above his people, and the arrows that he shoots will be like lightning bolts. Yahweh our Lord will blow his trumpet, and he will march with the powerful storms that come from the land of Teman in the south. ¹⁵ Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, will protect his people; the soldiers of Judah will attack and defeat their enemies who attack them using slings and stones. Those soldiers of Judah will drink and celebrate and shout like people who are drunk; they will be as full of wine as the bowl that holds the blood of the animals priests kill at the altar—the blood that the priests sprinkle on the corners of the altar.

ULB:

¹⁴ Yahweh will appear to them, and his arrows will shoot out like lightning! For my Lord Yahweh will blow the trumpet and will advance with the storms from Teman. ¹⁵ Yahweh of hosts will defend them, and they will devour them and defeat the stones of the slings. Then they will drink and shout like men drunk on wine, and they will be filled with wine like bowls, like the corners of the altar.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- trumpet
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- devour
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- altar

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This part of the prophecy continues with Hosea's words, instead of with Yahweh's words spoken through him.
- **will appear to them** - The word "them" refers to God's people. AT: "will be seen in the sky by his people" or "will come to his people"
- **will shoot out like lightning!** - The Israelites sometimes thought of lightning bolts as arrows that God shot.
- **blow the trumpet** - The trumpets were rams' horns. People will blow into them to give signals in battle and on other occasions.
- **will advance with the storms from Teman** - The Israelites sometimes thought of God as traveling on violent storms coming from the south.

- **will devour** - AT: “will completely defeat” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **defeat the stones of the slings** - The Israelites will defeat the soldiers who fight with sling-shots. These soldiers represent all the enemies of Israel, no matter what weapons they are carrying. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Then they will drink and shout like men drunk on wine** - AT: “They will shout and celebrate their victory as loudly as if they were drunk.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **they will be filled with wine like bowls** - This probably refers to the bowls that the priests used to carry animal’s blood to the altar. AT: “they will be as full of wine as the basins with which priests carry blood to the altar”
- **like the corners of the altar** - Altars had projecting corners where animal blood collected. AT: “as the corners of the altar are full of blood”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 9:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ On that day, Yahweh our God will save his people like a shepherd saves his flock of sheep from danger. In our land, they will be like jewels that sparkle in a crown. ¹⁷ They will be delightful and beautiful. The young men will become strong from eating grain, and the young women will become strong from drinking new wine.

ULB:

¹⁶ So Yahweh their God will rescue them on that day; they will be like a flock containing his people, for they will be the jewels of a crown, raised up over his land. ¹⁷ How good and how beautiful they will be! The young men will flourish on grain and the virgins on sweet wine!

translationWords:

- [flock, herd](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [grain](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Zechariah continues talking to the people.
- **for they will be the jewels of a crown** - AT: “in our land they will be like beautiful stones in a crown” (See: [Simile](#))
- **The young men will flourish on grain** - The young men will live on food they receive from the harvest.
- **and the virgins on sweet wine** - Young women will enjoy new wine. These references to young men and young women represent the entire population of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 09 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 09 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is written mainly in prose but still uses figurative language as the writer shares a message of redemption and hope for the exiles. (See: [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 10:1-2, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Redemption

This book, and especially this chapter, uses the concepts of redemption and remnant to share the relationship that the people of Judah have with their God. So many of the people of Israel perished as their kingdom went into exile. Now they are returning to the land, but the land is no longer theirs. They are living under foreign rule. (See: [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#) and [remnant](#))

Links:

- [Zechariah 10:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 10:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Ask Yahweh to cause rain to fall in the springtime, because he is the one who makes the clouds from which the rain falls in storms. He causes showers to fall on us, and he causes crops to grow well in the fields. ² What people think that the idols in their houses say is only nonsense, and people who say that they can interpret dreams tell only lies. When they tell people things to comfort them, what they say is useless, so the people who consult them are like lost sheep; they are in danger because they have no one to protect them like sheep with no shepherd.

ULB:

10 ¹ Ask for rain from Yahweh in the season of the spring rain—
 Yahweh who makes thunderstorms—
 and he gives rain showers to everyone
 and vegetation in the field.

² For household idols speak falsely; the diviners envision a lie;
 they tell deceitful dreams and give empty comfort,
 so they wander like sheep and suffer because there is no shepherd.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- idol, idolatrous
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- dream
- comfort, comforter
- sheep, ram, ewe
- suffer, suffering
- shepherd, to shepherd

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Zechariah continues talking to the people.
- **makes thunderstorms** - “makes storm clouds”
- **idols speak falsely** - AT: “idols give false messages”
- **diviners envision a lie** - AT: “diviners see false visions”
- **they tell deceitful dreams** - AT: “diviners lie about their dreams in order to deceive people”
- **they wander like sheep** - AT: “the people do not know which way to go” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 10:3

UDB:

³ Yahweh says, "I am angry with the leaders of my people, and I will punish them. I, Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, will take care of my people, the people of Judah, like a shepherd takes care of his flock, and I will cause them to be like war horses in battle.

ULB:

³ My wrath burns against the shepherds; it is the male goats—the leaders—that I will punish. Yahweh of hosts will also attend to his flock, the house of Judah, and make them like his warhorse in battle!

translationWords:

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [house](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [horse](#)

translationNotes:

- **My wrath burns against the shepherds** - "Shepherds" represents the leaders of God's people. AT: "My anger toward the shepherds of my people is strong" or "I am very angry with the leaders of my people" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **it is the male goats—the leaders—that I will punish** - "Male goats" represents oppressive leaders. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh of hosts will also attend to his flock, the house of Judah** - AT: "I will take care of the house of Judah"
- **make them like his warhorse in battle** - AT: "will give them my mighty fearless strength" (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 10:4-5

UDB:

⁴ From Judah will come rulers who will be very important. From Judah will come leaders who will hold the people together, like a tent peg keeps a tent up. From Judah will come leaders who will take the soldiers into war, like a king holding his own bow for battle. From them will come every one of their own leaders. ⁵ They will be like mighty warriors who trample their enemies into the mud during battle. I, Yahweh, will be with them, so they will defeat and shame their enemies who ride on horses.

ULB:

⁴ From them will come the cornerstone; from them will come the tent peg; from them will come the war bow; from them will come all leaders together.[1] Many modern versions put the idea of *together* at the start of the next verse. ⁵ They will be like warriors who trample their enemies into the mud of the streets in battle; they will make war, for Yahweh is with them, and they will shame those who ride warhorses.

translationWords:

- **cornerstone**
- **tent**
- **shame, shameful, ashamed**

translationNotes:

- **From them will come the cornerstone** - “The cornerstone will come from them.” An important ruler is spoken of as if he there the main foundation stone of a building. AT: “Some of their descendants will be very important rulers” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **from them will come the tent peg** - “the tent peg will come from them.” Key leaders are spoken of as if they are the large pegs that hold a tent in place. AT: “the leaders who will hold the nation together will come from them” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **from them will come the war bow** - “the war bow will come from them.” Military leaders are spoken of as if they were the bow that was used in battle. AT: “the military leaders will come from them” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **They will be like warriors** - AT: “They will be mighty in battle” (See: **Simile**)
- **who trample their enemies into the mud of the streets in battle** - AT: “who defeat their enemies completely” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **and they will shame those who ride warhorses** - AT: “and they will defeat their enemies on horses who fight them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 10:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ I will make the people of Judah strong, and I will rescue the people of Israel. I will bring them back from the countries to which they were exiled; I will do that because I pity them. Then it will be as though I had never abandoned them because I am Yahweh, their God, and I will answer them when they pray for help. ⁷ The people of Israel will then be like strong soldiers; they will be as happy as people who have drunk a lot of wine. Their children will see their fathers being very happy, and they also will be happy because of what I have done for them.

ULB:

⁶ I will strengthen the house of Judah and save the house of Joseph; for I will restore them and have mercy on them. They will be as though I had not cast them off, for I am Yahweh their God, and I will respond to them. ⁷ Then Ephraim will be like a warrior, and their hearts will rejoice as with wine; their children will see and rejoice. Their hearts will rejoice in me!

translationWords:

- house
- Judah
- save, safe
- Joseph (OT)
- restore, restoration
- mercy, merciful
- God
- Ephraim
- heart
- rejoice

translationNotes:

- **I will strengthen the house of Judah** - AT: "I will make the people of Judah strong" (See: [Simile](#))
- **the house of Joseph** - This refers to the people of the northern kingdom of Israel.
- **I had not cast them off** - AT: "I had not rejected them"
- **Ephraim will be like a warrior** - "Ephraim" refers here to the northern kingdom of Israel. AT: "Ephraim will be very strong" (See: [Simile](#))
- **their hearts will rejoice as with wine** - AT: "and they will be truly very happy" (See: [Simile](#))
- **their children will see and rejoice. Their hearts will rejoice in me!** - AT: "Their children will see what has taken place and will be happy because of what Yahweh has done for them!"

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 10:8-10

UDB:

⁸ I will signal for my people to return from far away, and I will gather them together in their own country. I will rescue them, and they will become very numerous as they were previously. ⁹ I have caused them to be scattered among many people groups, but in those distant countries they will think about me again. They and their children will remain alive and return to Judah. ¹⁰ I will bring them back from Egypt and from Assyria; I will bring them back to the regions of Gilead and Lebanon, but there not be enough space for them all to live there.

ULB:

⁸ I will whistle for them and gather them, for I will rescue them, and they will become as great as they previously were! ⁹ I sowed them among the peoples, but they will remember me in distant countries, so they and their children will live and return. ¹⁰ For I will restore them from the land of Egypt and gather them from Assyria. I will bring them to the land of Gilead and Lebanon until there is no more room for them.

translationWords:

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [Lebanon](#)

translationNotes:

- **I will whistle** - To whistle is to produce a high, shrill sound with air through narrowed lips. It is often done to give a signal to other people, as here.
- **until there is no more room for them** - The people will continue to go back to Judah and it will become crowded with no room for any more people to live there.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 10:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ I will go before them through their sufferings, as if I were walking through a sea, but I will calm those waves and end their sufferings, as if I were drying up the Nile River. I will defeat the proud soldiers of Assyria, and I will cause Egypt to no longer be powerful. ¹² I will enable my people to be strong, and they will honor me and obey me. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

¹¹ I will pass through the sea of their affliction; I will strike the waves of that sea and will dry up all the depths of the Nile. The majesty of Assyria will be brought down, and the scepter of Egypt will go away from the Egyptians. ¹² I will strengthen them in myself, and they will walk in my name—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- afflict, affliction
- Nile River, River of Egypt
- majesty
- walk
- name
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **will pass through the sea of their affliction** - Scripture often refers to the sea as an image of many troubles and hardships. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and will dry up all the depths of the Nile** - AT: “I will cause the Nile River to lose all its water”
- **The majesty of Assyria will be brought down** - Here “the majesty of Assyria” probably refers to the Assyrian army. AT: “I will destroy Assyria’s proud army.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **and the scepter of Egypt will go away from the Egyptians** - AT: “and the power of Egypt to rule other nations will end.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 10 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 10 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter unlike the previous one is a warning against the leaders amongst the exiles.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 11:1-3,17, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

This chapter uses an extended metaphor of sheep and shepherds to convey Yahweh's dismay at the leaders during the exiles. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Symbolism

The writer uses symbolism. The Zechariah is told to become a shepherd and he uses two staffs and names them "Unity" and "Favor." He does this very purposefully. In order to preserve this symbolism, it is important to pay attention the specific words used. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

Links:

- [Zechariah 11:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 11:1-3**UDB:**

¹ You people of Lebanon must open your gates and allow the fire to burn your cedar trees! ² Your cypress trees must be like people who are wailing, because enemies have cut down the cedar trees. Those glorious trees are all gone. The oak trees in the region of Bashan should also be like people who are wailing, because enemies have cut down the oak trees in the dense forest. ³ And listen to the shepherds crying because the fertile pastures have been ruined. Listen to the lions roar; they roar because the thick forest where they live near the Jordan River has been ruined.

ULB:

11 ¹ Open your doors, Lebanon, that fire may devour your cedars!

² Lament, cypress trees, for the cedar trees have fallen! What was majestic has been devastated!

Lament, you oaks of Bashan, for the strong forest has gone down.

³ The shepherds howl, for their glory has been destroyed!

The voice of the young lions' roar, for the pride of the Jordan River has been devastated!

translationWords:

- Lebanon
- fire
- devour
- cypress
- cedar
- majesty
- lament, lamentation
- oak
- Bashan
- shepherd, to shepherd
- glory, glorious
- lion
- Jordan River

translationNotes:

- **Open your doors, Lebanon, that fire may devour your cedars** - The prophet is speaking to the land of Lebanon as if it were a person. AT: "People of Lebanon, get ready for fire to

burn up your cedar trees” (See: [Apostrophe](#))

- **Lament, cypress trees, for the cedar trees have fallen** - AT: “If the trees were people, they would cry out in sorrow. The cypress trees stand alone because the cedars have burned and fallen.” (See: [Personification](#))
- **Lament, you oaks of Bashan, for the strong forest has gone down.** - AT: “If the oak trees in Bashan were people, they would wail, for their thick forests have been cut down.” (See: [Personification](#))
- **The shepherds howl** - AT: “The shepherds cry out loudly”
- **for their glory has been destroyed** - “Their glory” probably represents the rich pastures that the shepherds led their sheep to. AT: “for their rich pastures have been ruined.”
- **for the pride of the Jordan River** - AT: “because the trees and shrubbery where they lived by the Jordan River have been destroyed.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 11:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ This is what Yahweh my God said to me: "I want you to supervise this flock of sheep until the flock perishes. ⁵ The dealers in sheep will kill the sheep, and no one will punish them. Those who sell the sheep will say, 'I praise Yahweh, because I will become rich!' And the shepherds whom the owners hire do not feel sorry for the sheep. ⁶ And similarly, I no longer feel sorry for the people of this country. I am going to allow their fellow countrymen and their king, to oppress them. They will ruin this country, and I will not rescue any of them."

ULB:

⁴ This is what Yahweh my God says, "Like a shepherd, watch over the flock destined for slaughter! ⁵ (The ones who buy them slaughter them and are not punished, and the ones who sell them say, 'Blessed be Yahweh! I have become rich!' for the shepherds working for the flocks' owners have no pity on them.) ⁶ For I will no longer pity the inhabitants of the land!—this is Yahweh's declaration. See! I myself am about to turn over every person into the hand of his neighbor and into the hand of his king, and they will destroy the land and none of them will I deliver them from their hand."

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- God
- shepherd, to shepherd
- flock, herd
- slaughter
- punish, punishment
- bless, blessed, blessing
- declare, declaration
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- neighbor
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Here Yahweh starts to give instructions to Zechariah in the form of a parable about shepherds and sheep.
- **the inhabitants of the land** - "the people of the land"

- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - This phrase is often translated as "Yahweh says" in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **turn over every person into the hand of his neighbor** - AT: "allow each person to be controlled by another person" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **into the hand of his king** - AT: "into the unjust control of his king" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **they will destroy the land** - AT: "they will have no mercy on the land's people" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **none of them will I deliver them from their hand** - AT: "but I will not rescue the people of Judah from their power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 11:7-9

UDB:

⁷ So I became the shepherd of a flock of sheep that dealers were going to slaughter and to sell the meat. Then I took two shepherds' staffs. I named the one staff 'Kindness' and the other staff 'Union.' This is how I began to shepherd the sheep. ⁸ But the three shepherds who had been with the flock detested me, and I became impatient with the owners who had hired us all. Within one month I had destroyed those shepherds.

⁹ So I said to the dealers, "I will no longer be a shepherd for you. I will allow the ones that are dying to die. I will allow the ones that are getting lost to perish. And I will not prevent those that remain from eating each other."

ULB:

⁷ So I became the shepherd of the flock destined for slaughter, for those who dealt in sheep. I took two staffs; one staff I called "Favor" and the other I called "Unity." In this way I shepherded the flock. ⁸ In one month I destroyed the three shepherds, for I ran out of patience with them, and they hated me as well. ⁹ Then I said to the owners, "I will not work as a shepherd for you any longer. The sheep that are dying—let them die; the sheep that are being destroyed—let them be destroyed. Let the sheep that remain each eat the flesh of its neighbor."

translationWords:

- shepherd, to shepherd
- flock, herd
- slaughter
- sheep, ram, ewe
- staff
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- flesh
- neighbor

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The parable about shepherds and sheep continues.
- **the flock destined for slaughter** - "the flock of sheep that was intended for slaughter."
- **staffs** - Staffs are wooden sticks used for various purposes, including directing sheep. Staffs may have different types of hooks on the ends.
- **Favor** - Various versions also translate the Hebrew word in this text as "grace" and "beauty."
- **Unity** - This is the idea of brotherhood between the two parts of Israel, the northern kingdom and the southern kingdom.

- **I ran out of patience with them** - AT: "I could no longer tolerate the sheep owners who had hired me."

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 11:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then I took the staff that I had named ‘Kindness,’ and I broke it. I did this because Yahweh had told me to cancel the covenant that he had made with all his tribes of Israel. ¹¹ So that covenant was ended on that very day. The dealers who were watching me knew by seeing what I was doing that I was giving them a message from Yahweh.

¹² I told them, “If you think it is right, pay me for my work. If you do not think it is right, do not pay me.” So they paid me only thirty pieces of silver.

ULB:

¹⁰ So I took my staff “Favor” and broke it to break the covenant that I had made with all of my tribes. ¹¹ On that day the covenant was broken, and those who dealt in sheep and who were watching me knew that Yahweh had spoken. ¹² I said to them, “If it seems good to you, pay me my wages. But if not, do not do it.” So they weighed out my wages—thirty pieces of silver.

translationWords:

- [staff](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [silver](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The parable about shepherds and sheep continues.
- **broke it to break the covenant that I had made with all of my tribes** - The prophet is speaking and acting for Yahweh here.
- **had spoken** - AT: “had spoken a message to them”
- **thirty pieces of silver** - 330 grams of silver. A shekel weighed eleven grams. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 11:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Then Yahweh said to me, “That is a ridiculously small amount of money that they have for your work. So put it into the treasury.” So I took the silver to the temple of Yahweh, and I deposited it in the treasury there.

¹⁴ Then I broke my second staff, the one that I had named “Union.” That indicated that Judah and Israel would no longer be together as brothers.

ULB:

¹³ Then Yahweh said to me, “Deposit the silver in the treasury, the excellent price at which they valued you!” So I took the thirty pieces of silver and deposited them in the treasury in the house of Yahweh. ¹⁴ Then I broke my second staff, “Unity,” to break the brotherhood between Judah and Israel.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [staff](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The parable about shepherds and sheep continues.
- **treasury** - the storehouses in the temple of Yahweh
- **the excellent price** - This means to say that this price was very small for a shepherd doing Yahweh’s work. See UDB, which removes the irony: “a ridiculously small amount of money.” (See: [Irony](#))
- **the thirty pieces of silver** - 330 grams of silver. A shekel weighed eleven grams. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 11:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Then Yahweh said to me, "Take again the things that a foolish shepherd uses, ¹⁶ because I am going to appoint a new shepherd for the people, one who will not take care of my people. He will be a foolish shepherd: he will ignore the dying sheep and those that have gotten lost. As for the healthy sheep, he will not feed them; instead, he will butcher them for his own food and will tear off their hooves.

ULB:

¹⁵ Yahweh said to me, "Again, take the equipment of a foolish shepherd for yourself, ¹⁶ for see, I am about to set in place a shepherd in the land. He will not care for the perishing sheep. He will not seek out the sheep gone missing, nor heal the crippled sheep. He will not feed the sheep that are healthy, but will eat the flesh of the fattened sheep and will tear off their hooves.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [perish, perishing, perishable](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [heal, cure](#)
- [hoof, hoofed, hooves](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The parable about shepherds and sheep continues.
- **the fattened sheep** - the healthy, well-grown sheep
- **will tear off their hooves** - probably as an act of cruelty

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 11:17

UDB:

¹⁷ But terrible things will happen to that foolish shepherd who abandons the flock. May his enemies strike his arm and his right eye with their swords. May he have no more strength in his arm, and may his right eye become completely blind.”

ULB:

¹⁷ Woe to the worthless shepherd who forsakes the flock!
May the sword come against his arm and his right eye!
May his arm wither away and may his right eye become blind!”

translationWords:

- woe
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- shepherd, to shepherd
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- flock, herd
- sword

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The parable about shepherds and sheep continues.
- **Woe to the worthless shepherd** - AT: “What sorrow waits for this worthless shepherd”
- **come against his arm and his right eye** - AT: “wound right arm and pierce his right eye!”
- **May the sword come against** - “Sword” here represents enemies who will attack the shepherd. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **his arm** - his power to fight (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his right eye** - his ability to see while fighting.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 11 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 11 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Similar to chapter 11, this chapter is written mainly in prose and is talking about Jerusalem.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prophecy

Verses 10-11 are quoted in the New Testament and apply to Jesus' death on the Cross. (See: [cross](#))

Links:

- [Zechariah 12:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 12:1-3

UDB:

¹ This is a message from Yahweh concerning Israel—Yahweh, the one who stretched out the sky, who created the earth, and who gave life to human beings. This is what he says: ² "I will soon cause Jerusalem to be like a cup full of very strong alcoholic drink, and the people of other nations who drink it will stagger around. The people of Judah will drink it, too, for they also will suffer when the enemy besieges Jerusalem. ³ At that time, the armies of all the people groups will gather to attack Jerusalem, but I will cause Jerusalem to be like a very heavy rock, and all who try to lift it will be badly injured. This will happen when the armies of all the world's nations attack Jerusalem.

ULB:

12 ¹ This is a declaration of Yahweh's word concerning Israel—a declaration of Yahweh, who stretched out the skies and laid the foundation of the earth, who fashions the spirit of mankind within man, ² "See, I am about to make Jerusalem into a cup causing all the peoples surrounding her to stagger about. It will also be like that for Judah during the siege against Jerusalem. ³ On that day that, I will make Jerusalem a heavy stone for all the peoples. Anyone trying to lift that stone will hurt himself very much, and all the nations of the earth will gather against that city.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- declare, declaration
- foundation, founded
- earth, earthly
- spirit, spiritual
- Jerusalem
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- siege, besiege
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses begin a section that tells about the coming attack against Jerusalem and how God will rescue the city.
- **a declaration of Yahweh** - This phrase is often translated as "Yahweh says" in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.

- **who stretched out the skies** - “the one who created the sky”
- **laid the foundation of the earth** - AT: “put all the earth into place”
- **fashions the spirit of mankind within man** - AT: “creates the human spirit”
- **cup** - “cup of something to drink” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **causing all the peoples surrounding her to stagger about** - That is, the drink is alcoholic and will cause the armies attacking Jerusalem to become drunk and unable to fight. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **her** - That is, the city of Jerusalem. It was common in Hebrew to speak of a city or country as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **heavy stone for all the peoples** - “something impossible to move” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 12:4-5

UDB:

⁴ At that time I will cause every one of their enemies' horses to panic, and their riders to become crazy. I will protect the people of Judah, but I will cause all their enemies' horses to become blind. ⁵ Then the leaders of Judah will say to themselves, 'The people in Jerusalem encourage us because Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, is the one they worship.'

ULB:

⁴ On that day—this is Yahweh's declaration—I will strike every horse with terror and every rider with madness. I will look with favor on the house of Judah and will strike every horse of the armies blind. ⁵ Then the leaders of Judah will say in their hearts, 'The inhabitants of Jerusalem are our strength because of Yahweh of hosts, their God.'

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue telling about the coming attack against Jerusalem and how God will rescue the city.
- **On that day** - This refers to the day that the armies attack Jerusalem.
- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - This phrase is often translated as "Yahweh says" in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **I will look with favor on** - AT: "I will protect"
- **the house of Judah** - "the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **say in their hearts** - This means they will think and say to themselves.
- **because of Yahweh of hosts** - AT: "because they worship Yahweh of hosts"

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 12:6**UDB:**

⁶ At that time I will make the leaders of Judah like a pot of fire that someone puts in piles of firewood; and like a burning torch in a field of ripe grain. The leaders of Judah and their soldiers will destroy the people groups surrounding them in all directions. But the people of Jerusalem will remain safe in their own city.”

ULB:

⁶ On that day I will make the leaders of Judah like firepots among wood and like a flaming torch among standing grain, for they will consume all the surrounding peoples on their right and on their left. Jerusalem will again live in her own place.”

translationWords:

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- grain
- consume
- Jerusalem
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This verse continues telling about the coming attack against Jerusalem and how God will rescue the city.
- **On that day** - This refers to the time when Jerusalem is attacked and God defeats her enemies.
- **like firepots among wood ... standing grain** - “like firepots among stacked firewood ... unharvested stalks of grain standing in a field” (See: [Simile](#))
- **firepots** - clay pots in which ancient people often carried burning coals
- **flaming torch** - a wooden stick that is burning at one end which gives light as one travels or carries fire somewhere
- **will consume all the surrounding peoples** - “will destroy the surrounding peoples” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Jerusalem will again live in her own place** - The people of Jerusalem will again live in their own city. (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)

- Zechariah 12 General Notes
- [Zechariah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 12:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Yahweh will protect those who live in the other places in Judah before he rescues the people of Jerusalem, in order that people will not honor the descendants of David and those in Jerusalem more than the people in all the rest of Judah. ⁸ At that time, Yahweh will protect everyone in Jerusalem. The weakest soldiers among them will be as strong as David was, and the descendants of David will be like God; they will lead the others like the angel of Yahweh himself. ⁹ “At that time, I will start to destroy all the armies that attack Jerusalem.”

ULB:

⁷ Yahweh will save the tents of Judah first, so that the honor of the house of David and the honor of those who live in Jerusalem may not be greater than the rest of Judah. ⁸ On that day Yahweh will be the defender of the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and on that day those who are weak among them will be like David, while the house of David will be like God, like the angel of Yahweh in front of them. ⁹ ”On that day that I will begin to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- tent
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- honor, to honor
- house of David
- Jerusalem
- angel, archangel
- nation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue telling about the coming attack against Jerusalem and how God will rescue the city.
- **the tents of Judah** - Here “tents” represents homes, and homes represent the people who live in them. AT: “the people of Judah.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the house of David** - Possible meanings are 1) the descendants of David or 2) the ruling class of people. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the angel of Yahweh** - This is an angel sent by Yahweh to protect the people.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 12:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ “I, Yahweh, will cause the descendants of David to have mercy on others, and to beg me to have mercy on themselves. They will gaze at me, whom they pierced.” They will cry bitterly, as people cry for a firstborn son, an only son, who has died. ¹¹ At that time, many people in Jerusalem will be crying bitterly, as people cry at Hadad Rimmon in the plain of Megiddo.

ULB:

¹⁰ But I will pour out a spirit of compassion and pleading on the house of David and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so they will look on me, the one they have pierced. They will mourn for me, as one mourns for an only son; they will bitterly lament for him like those who lament the death of a firstborn son. ¹¹ On that day the laments in Jerusalem will be like the laments at Hadad Rimmon in the plain of Megiddo.

translationWords:

- spirit, spiritual
- compassion, compassionate
- plead, pleading, plea
- house of David
- Jerusalem
- mourn, mourning
- lament, lamentation
- son, son of
- death, die, dead
- firstborn

translationNotes:

- **I will pour out a spirit of compassion and pleading** - AT: “I will give the people a spirit to have mercy on others and to pray to me for mercy”
- **the one they have pierced** - AT: “the one whom they stabbed to death”
- **the laments in Jerusalem will be like the laments at Hadad Rimmon** - Hadad Rimmon may have been the place where the good King Josiah died of battle wounds after the Battle of Megiddo. It appears that the custom arose to hold periodic mourning there for his death. Some people, however, think that Hadad Rimmon was the name of a false god who was believed to die every year, an event for which his worshipers would go into mourning.
- **Megiddo** - This is the name of a plain in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#)).

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 12:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Many people in Judah will cry, each clan by themselves. The male descendants of David will mourn by themselves, and their wives will mourn by themselves; the male descendants of Nathan will mourn by themselves, and their wives will mourn by themselves. ¹³ The male descendants of Levi will mourn by themselves, and their wives will mourn by themselves; the male descendants of Shimei will mourn by themselves, and their wives will mourn by themselves. ¹⁴ All the clans will mourn separately, their males by themselves, and their wives by themselves.”

ULB:

¹² The land will mourn, each clan separate from other clans. The clan of the house of David will be separate and their wives will be separate from the men. The clan of the house of Nathan will be separate and their wives will be separate from the men. ¹³ The clan of the house of Levi will be separate and their wives will be separate from the men. The clan of the Shimeites will be separate and their wives will be separate from the men. ¹⁴ Every clan of the remaining clans—each clan will be separate and the wives will be separate from the men.”

translationWords:

- [mourn, mourning](#)
- [clan](#)
- [David](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Shimei](#)

translationNotes:

- **The land** - This refers to all the people living in the land of Judah. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the house of David ... of Nathan ... of Levi** - The descendants of David ... of Nathan ... of Levi. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 12 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 12 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is written partly in prose and partly in poetry.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 13:7-9, which is an extended quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Zechariah often speaks of the last days by using the phrase “that day” or “in that day.” When referencing a future “day,” the translator should be aware that it is possible that the author is speaking about the last days. (See: [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Links:

- [Zechariah 13:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 13:1-2**UDB:**

¹ At that time it will be as though there is a spring of water that will continuously flow to cleanse the descendants of King David and all the other people in Jerusalem from the guilt of the sins that they have committed, especially from becoming unacceptable to Yahweh by worshiping idols.

² Yahweh, the Commander of angel armies, says, "At that time, I will prevent people from even mentioning the names of the idols in their country, and no one will worship them anymore. I will also drive away from the land all the people who falsely claim that they are prophets; I will also drive away the evil spirit that leads them to tell the people false messages from me.

ULB:

13 ¹ "On that day a spring will be opened for the house of David and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, for their sin and impurity. ² On that day—this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts—that I will cut off the names of the idols from the land so that they will no longer be called to mind. I will also cause the false prophets and their unclean spirit to go out of the land.

translationWords:

- house of David
- Jerusalem
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- cut off
- name
- idol, idolatrous
- false prophet
- unclean
- spirit, spiritual

translationNotes:

- **a spring** - A place where water flows naturally out of the ground.
- **for their sin and impurity** - AT: "to cleanse their sin and impurity"
- **this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts** - This phrase is often translated as "Yahweh says" in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **cut off the names of the idols from the land** - AT: "erase idol worship throughout the land"
- **I will also cause the false prophets and their unclean spirit to go out of the land** - AT: "I will also remove the false prophets and their impure spirits from the land."

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 13:3

UDB:

³ If someone continues to prophesy falsely, his own parents, even though he is their own son, will say to him, 'You have told lies saying that Yahweh gave those messages to you, so you must die.' Then they will stab him and kill him.

ULB:

³ If any man continues to prophesy, his father and mother who bore him will tell him, 'You will not live, for you speak lies in the name of Yahweh!' Then the father and mother who bore him will pierce him when he prophesies.

translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [name](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **his father and mother who bore him** - The phrase "who bore him" describes "his father and mother" in order to express surprise that someone's own parents would treat him in this way.
- **You will not live** - AT: "You must die"
- **will pierce** - Stab him to kill him." (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 13:4-6

UDB:

⁴ At that time, the false prophets will be ashamed to announce that he has received any vision at all. They will no longer put on cloaks made with animal hair that prophets normally wear, because they will want the people to think that they were never really prophets at all. ⁵ So each of them will say, 'I am not really a prophet; I am a farmer, and I have been a farmer on my land ever since I was a boy!' ⁶ But others will see scars on their bodies and think that they cut themselves in order to please idols while they were worshiping them. So they will ask, 'Why do you have those scars?' And they will tell a lie: 'I was injured in a quarrel at my friend's house.'"

ULB:

⁴ On that day that each prophet will be ashamed of his vision when he is about to prophesy. These prophets will no longer wear a hairy cloak, in order to deceive the people. ⁵ For each will say, 'I am not a prophet! I am a man who works the soil, for the land became my work while I was still a young man!' ⁶ But someone will say to him, 'What are these wounds between your arms?' and he will answer, 'I was wounded with those in my friends' house.'"

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- vision
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

translationNotes:

- **that each prophet** - This refers to the false prophets, not to the true prophets of Yahweh.
- **no longer wear a hairy cloak** - "Cloak" refers to a heavy outer garment. s made of animal hair that prophets usually wore.
- **works the soil** - That is, "farms."
- **the land became my work while I was still a young man** - Some modern versions translate this Hebrew text as "a man acquired me in my youth," that is, acquired him as a servant.
- **What are these wounds between your arms?** - AT: "How did you get those cuts on your chest?" This refers to the apparent custom of false prophets wounding themselves in their ceremonies.
- **he will answer** - That is, he will answer with a lie.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 13:7**UDB:**

⁷ Yahweh, the Commander of angel armies, says, “Someone must attack and kill the one who is like a shepherd working for me, the man who is my close companion. You with the sword! When you kill my shepherd, my people will run away like sheep. And I myself will attack my ordinary people, those who are like little sheep.”

ULB:

⁷ ”Sword! Rouse yourself against my shepherd,
 the man who stands close to me—
 this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts.
 Strike the shepherd,
 and the flock will scatter!
 For I will turn my hand against the lowly ones.

translationWords:

- sword
- shepherd, to shepherd
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- flock, herd
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- lowly, lowliness

translationNotes:

- **Sword! Rouse yourself** - AT: “You, sword! You must wake up.” This is a command from Yahweh for his shepherd to be attacked and killed. (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Personification](#))
- **against my shepherd** - This refer to a certain king or a certain servant of Yahweh.
- **this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts** - This phrase is often translated as “Yahweh says” in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **the flock** - “The flock” refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the lowly ones** - This probably refers to all the Israelites who are weak and defenseless.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 13:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Yahweh also says, "Two thirds of the people in Judah will die; Only one third of the people in Judah will remain alive. ⁹ I will test the ones that remain alive by causing them to experience great difficulties, to find out if they will continue to worship me. I will purify them as someone purifies gold or silver by putting it into a very hot fire. Then my people will call to me for help, and I will answer them. I will tell them that they are my people, and they will say that I, Yahweh, am the God they worship and obey.

ULB:

⁸ Then it will come about that throughout all the land—this is Yahweh's declaration—

that two thirds of it will be cut off! Those people will perish;
only one-third will remain there.

⁹ I will bring that third through the fire

and refine them as silver is refined;

I will test them as gold is tested.

They will call on my name,

and I will answer them and say,

'This is my people!'

and they will say, 'Yahweh is my God!'"

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- cut off
- perish, perishing, perishable
- fire
- silver
- gold
- test
- call, calling, called, call out
- name
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- God

translationNotes:

- **this is Yahweh's declaration** - This phrase is often translated as "Yahweh says" in the UDB. You can translate this concept whichever way is best in your language. This phrase is used many times in Zechariah.
- **I will bring that third through the fire** - Metal is passed through fire in order to purify or harden it. This expression serves here as a metaphor for exposing the people to suffering in order that they may become more faithful to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **refine them as silver is refined; I will test them as gold is tested** - Refining refers to making precious metals such as silver more pure. Metals such as silver and gold are tested in order to discover how pure or strong they are. Both refining and testing are here metaphors for making the people more faithful to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 13 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 13 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is written in prose about Jerusalem during the last days. (See: [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Last days

Zechariah often speaks of the last days by using the phrase “that day” or “in that day.” When referencing a future “day,” the translator should be aware that it is possible that the author is speaking about the last days.

Links:

- [Zechariah 14:01 Notes](#)

Zechariah 14:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Listen! It will soon be the time when Yahweh will judge everyone. At that time, you, the people of Jerusalem, will watch your enemies divide what you owned among themselves.

² Yes, Yahweh says that he will cause the armies of many nations to attack Jerusalem. They will capture the city, take all the valuable things from your houses, and rape the women. They will take half of the people to other countries, but they will allow the other people to remain in the city.

ULB:

14 ¹ Behold! A day for Yahweh is coming when your plunder will be divided in your midst. ² For I will gather every nation against Jerusalem for battle and the city will be captured. The houses will be plundered and the women raped. Half of the city will go out into captivity, but the remainder of the people will not be cut off from the city.

translationWords:

- [day of the Lord, day of Yahweh](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [seize](#)
- [sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [cut off](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This chapter describes the final war for the city of Jerusalem and how God will save her.
- **your plunder will be divided in your midst** - AT: “your enemies will take all of your possessions and divide it for themselves while you watch” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I will gather every nation against Jerusalem for battle** - AT: “I will cause many nations to attack Jerusalem” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **the remainder of the people will not be cut off from the city** - AT: “your enemies will allow the remaining people to stay in the city” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)

- Zechariah 14 General Notes
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14:3-4

UDB:

³ But then Yahweh will attack those nations; he will fight as he fought at other times in battle. ⁴ On that day, he will stand on the Mount of Olives, east of Jerusalem. The Mount of Olives will split into two parts, with a large valley between the parts. Half of the mount will move toward the north, and half will move toward the south.

ULB:

³ But Yahweh will go out and wage war against those nations as when he wages war on the day of battle. ⁴ On that day his feet will stand on the Mount of Olives, which is beside Jerusalem to the east. The Mount of Olives will be split in half between the east and the west by a very great valley and half of the mountain will go back toward the north and half toward the south.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the description of the final war for the city of Jerusalem and of how God will save her.
- **as when he wages war on the day of battle** - AT: “just as he battled in the past”
- **his feet will stand on the Mount of Olives** - “His feet” refers to Yahweh himself. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14:5

UDB:

⁵ You people of Jerusalem will flee through that valley which extends to the other side of the mount, all the way to the village of Azal. It will be just as when people fled when there was an earthquake when Uzziah was king. Then Yahweh my God will come, and his own angels will be with him.

ULB:

⁵ Then you will flee down the valley between Yahweh's mountains, for the valley between those mountains will reach to Azal. You will flee just as you fled from the earthquake in the days of Uzziah, king of Judah. Then Yahweh my God will come and all the holy ones will be with him.

translationWords:

- [Uzziah, Azariah](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the description of the final war for the city of Jerusalem and of how God will save her.
- **Azal** - This is the name of a town or village east of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the holy ones** - This probably refers to God's angels.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ At that time, there will be no light from the sun, but neither will it be cold or frosty. ⁷ Only Yahweh knows when this will happen. There will be no daytime or nighttime, because it will be light all the time, even in the evening.

⁸ At that time, water will flow from Jerusalem. One stream will flow toward the east to the Dead Sea. The other stream will flow toward the west to the Mediterranean Sea. The water will flow all the time, even during the hot season as well as in the cold season.

ULB:

⁶ On that day that there will be no light, but no cold or frost either. ⁷ On that day, a day known only to Yahweh, there will no longer be day or night, for the evening will be a time of light. ⁸ On that day living waters will flow out of Jerusalem. Half of them will flow to the eastern sea and half to the western sea, in summer and in winter.

translationWords:

- [light](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [water, waters](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the description of the final war for the city of Jerusalem and of how God will save her.
- **living waters** - This normally means running or flowing water, rather than still or stagnant water. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the eastern sea** - This refers to the Dead Sea, which is east of Jerusalem.
- **the western sea** - This refers to the Mediterranean Sea.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ After that time, Yahweh will be the king who rules the entire world. Everyone will know that Yahweh, and only Yahweh, is the true God.

¹⁰ At that time, all the land in Judah will be flat, like the plain along the Jordan, from the town of Geba in the north to the town of Rimmon far to the south of Jerusalem. Jerusalem will remain high up, as it has always been. The city will extend northeast from the Benjamin Gate and the Corner Gate, which was the first gate, to the Tower of Hananel, and to the king's winepresses to the southwest. ¹¹ Many people will live there, and God will never again threaten the city with destruction. It will be a completely safe city to live in.

ULB:

⁹ Yahweh will be king over all the earth. On that day there will be Yahweh, the one God, and his name alone. ¹⁰ All the land will be like the Arabah, from Geba to Rimmon south of Jerusalem. Jerusalem will continue to be raised up and remain in its own place, from the Benjamin Gate to the place where the first gate was, to the Corner Gate, and from the Tower of Hananel to the king's winepresses. ¹¹ The people will live in Jerusalem and there will be no more complete destruction from God against them. Jerusalem will live in safety.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- king
- earth, earthly
- name
- Arabah
- Jerusalem
- Benjamin
- gate, gate bar
- winepress

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the description of the final war for the city of Jerusalem and of how God will save her.
- **there will be Yahweh, the one God, and his name alone** - "there will only be one God, Yahweh, who will be worshiped." (See: [Hendiadys](#))
- **Arabah ... Geba ... Rimmon** - These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **Jerusalem will continue to be raised up** - This refers to the altitude of the city of Jerusalem, about 760 meters above sea level.
- **the Benjamin Gate ... the first gate ... the Corner Gate** - These are names of various gates in the city wall of Jerusalem.
- **the Tower of Hananel** - This refers to a strong point in the city defenses on the wall. It was probably built by a man named Hananel.
- **the king's winepresses** - This probably refers to the place where wine was made for the royal family.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14:12-13

UDB:

¹² But Yahweh will bring a severe disease on the people groups that attacked Jerusalem. Their flesh will rot while they are still standing up. Their eyes will rot in their sockets and their tongues will rot in their mouths. ¹³ At that time, Yahweh will cause them to panic. They will grab hold of each other and attack each other.

ULB:

¹² This will be the plague with which Yahweh will attack all the peoples that waged war against Jerusalem: their flesh will rot away even as they are standing on their feet. Their eyes will rot in their sockets and their tongues will rot in their mouths. ¹³ On that day that great fear from Yahweh will come among them. Each one will seize the hand of another, and the hand of one will be raised up against the hand of another.

translationWords:

- [plague](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [tongue](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [neighbor](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the description of the final war for the city of Jerusalem and of how God will save her.
- **standing on their feet** - AT: “walking around”
- **the hand of one will be raised up against the hand of another** - Each person will attack another. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Even the people who live in other places in Judah will attack Jerusalem. They will collect the valuable things, the plunder, from the surrounding armies of the nations—a lot of gold and silver and clothes. ¹⁵ The same plague that will afflict the people of other nations will afflict the horses, mules, camels, donkeys, and all the other work animals in their camps.

ULB:

¹⁴ Judah will also fight against Jerusalem. They will gather the wealth of all the surrounding nations—gold, silver, and fine clothes in great abundance. ¹⁵ A plague will also be on the horses and the mules, the camels and the donkeys, and on every animal in those camps will also suffer that same plague.

translationWords:

- Judah
- Jerusalem
- nation
- gold
- silver
- plague
- horse
- camel
- donkey, mule
- suffer, suffering

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the description of the final war for the city of Jerusalem and of how God will save her.
- **Judah will also fight against Jerusalem** - Some versions read, “Judah will also fight for Jerusalem.” The Hebrew text is uncertain.
- **They will gather the wealth** - AT: “They will capture the possessions”
- **in great abundance** - “in great quantities”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)

- Zechariah 14 General Notes
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ The people of other nations who previously came to fight against Jerusalem, all those who are still alive, will return to Jerusalem every year to worship the King, Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies, and to celebrate the Festival of Shelters. ¹⁷ If there are people in those nations who do not go to Jerusalem to worship there, rain will not fall on their land. ¹⁸ If the people of Egypt do not go to Jerusalem, they will not have any rain. And Yahweh will cause them to suffer the same plague that afflicted the people of other nations that do not celebrate the Festival of Shelters.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then it will happen that all who remain in those nations that came against Jerusalem will instead go up from year to year to worship the king, Yahweh of hosts, and to keep the Festival of Shelters. ¹⁷ It will happen that if anyone from all the nations of the earth does not go up to Jerusalem to worship the king, Yahweh of hosts, then Yahweh will not bring rain on them. ¹⁸ If the nation of Egypt does not go up, then they will not receive rain. A plague from Yahweh will attack the nations that do not go up to keep the Festival of Shelters.

translationWords:

- nation
- worship
- worship
- king
- festival
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- earth, earthly
- Egypt, Egyptian
- plague

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the description of the final war for the city of Jerusalem and of how God will save her.
- **that came against Jerusalem** - AT: “that attacked Jerusalem”
- **will attack the nations** - AT: “will severely punish the nations”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)

- Zechariah 14 General Notes
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14:19**UDB:**

¹⁹ That is how Yahweh will punish the people of Egypt and the people of any other nation who do not go to Jerusalem to celebrate the Festival of Shelters.

ULB:

¹⁹ This will be the punishment for Egypt and the punishment for every nation that does not go up to keep the Festival of Shelters.

translationWords:

- [punish, punishment](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [nation](#)
- [festival](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the description of the final war for the city of Jerusalem and of how God will save her.

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

Zechariah 14:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ At that time, the words “Dedicated to Yahweh” will be written on the bells that are fastened to the horses. The cooking pots in the courtyard of the temple will belong to Yahweh, like the bowls that are in front of the altar. ²¹ Every pot in Jerusalem and everywhere else in Judah will be dedicated to Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies. So everyone who offers sacrifices there in Jerusalem will be able to take some of the meat that has been brought for sacrifices and cook it in their own pots. And at that time, people will no longer buy or sell things in the courtyard of the temple of Yahweh, the Commander of the angel armies.

ULB:

²⁰ But on that day, the bells of the horses will say, “Set apart to Yahweh,” and the basins in Yahweh’s house will be like the bowls before the altar. ²¹ For every pot in Jerusalem and Judah will be set apart to Yahweh of hosts and everyone who brings a sacrifice will eat from them and boil in them. On that day traders will no longer be in the house of Yahweh of hosts.

translationWords:

- horse
- set apart
- Yahweh
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- altar
- Jerusalem
- Judah
- sacrifice, offering
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the description of the final war for the city of Jerusalem and of how God will save her.
- **will be like the bowls before the altar** - AT: “will be as sacred as the bowls used at the altar”
- **every pot in Jerusalem and Judah will be dedicated to Yahweh of hosts** - Various types of pots and utensils were made especially to be used in the temple for the worship of Yahweh and for the sacrifices. These were considered special, not to be used for anything else.
- **Traders will no longer be in the house of Yahweh** - It was the custom for traders to sell the people things they needed in order to make proper sacrifices to Yahweh in the temple.

Some versions translated “Canaanites” instead, because the Hebrew text may have a double meaning: “traders” and “Canaanites.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Zechariah](#)
- [Zechariah 14 General Notes](#)
- [Zechariah 14 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

Zechariah 1

Q? During whose reign did Zechariah prophesy?

A. Zechariah prophesied during the reign of Darius. [1:1]

Q? Who was Zechariah?

A. Zechariah was the son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo the prophet. [1:1]

Q? What did Yahweh of hosts say he would do if the people would turn to him?

A. Yahweh of hosts said if the people would turn to him, he would return to them. [1:3]

Q? What did their fathers do when Yahweh told them to turn from their evil ways and wicked practices?

A. Their fathers would not hear and did not pay attention to Yahweh. [1:4]

Q? What did the people say when they repented?

A. When they repented the people said, “Yahweh of hosts’s plans are made in keeping with his word and practice, and he has carried them out.” [1:6]

Q? What did Zechariah see when the word of Yahweh came to him in the night?

A. Zechariah saw a man riding on a red horse among the myrtle trees in the valley. Behind him were red, reddish-brown, and white horses. [1:8]

Q? What were the horses that Zechariah saw?

A. The horses were those Yahweh had sent out to roam throughout the earth. [1:10]

Q? What did the horses who roamed throughout the earth find?

A. The horses found all the earth sitting still and at rest. [1:11]

Q? What question did the angel of Yahweh have for Yahweh concerning Jerusalem and the cities of Judah?

A. The angel of Yahweh asked Yahweh how long he would show no compassion to Jerusalem and the cities of Judah. [1:12]

Q? What did Yahweh of hosts say concerning Jerusalem and the cities of Judah?

A. Yahweh said he had returned to Jerusalem with mercies, that his house would be built within her and the measuring line would be stretched out over Jerusalem. Yahweh also said his cities would once again overflow with goodness and Yahweh would again comfort Zion and once again choose Jerusalem. [1:16-17]

Q? What were the four horns that Zechariah saw?

A. The four horns were those who had scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem. [1:19]

Q? Who were the four blacksmiths that Zechariah saw and what were they going to do?

A. The blacksmiths were people who were going to drive out and cast down the horns of the nations who had lifted up any horn against the land of Judah to scatter her. [1:20-21]

Zechariah 2

Q? What was the young man going to do with the measuring line in his hand?

A. He was going to measure Jerusalem, to determine its width and its length. [2:2]

Q? Why did the second angel say that Jerusalem would sit in the open country?

A. The second angel said this because of the multitudes of men and beasts that would be within her. [2:4]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would become for Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh said he would become a wall of fire around her and he would be the glory in her midst. [2:5]

Q? What was Yahweh's declaration to those who lived with the daughter of Babylon?

A. Yahweh told them to escape to Zion. [2:7]

Q? How were they supposed to know that Yahweh of hosts had sent the second angel?

A. The second angel said Judah and Israel would know Yahweh had sent him when he shook his hand over the nations that plundered them and when the nations that plundered Judah and Israel were plundered for their slaves. [2:9]

Q? What will happen when Yahweh comes and encamps in Zion?

A. When that happens great nations will join themselves to Yahweh and those of Zion will become his people. [2:11]

Q? Why is all flesh told to be silent before Yahweh?

A. All flesh is told to be silent before Yahweh because Yahweh has been roused from out of the heavens. [2:13]

Zechariah 3

Q? Who was near Joshua the high priest?

A. Joshua was standing before Yahweh and Satan was standing at his right hand. [3:1]

Q? What was Satan doing at Joshua's right hand?

A. Satan was accusing Joshua of sin. [3:1]

Q? What was Joshua wearing as he stood before the angel?

A. Joshua was dressed in filthy garments. [3:3]

Q? What did the angel of Yahweh say he had done for Joshua?

A. The angel said he had caused Joshua's iniquity to pass from Joshua. [3:4]

Q? What happened concerning Joshua's clothing?

A. The angel commanded the filthy garments to be removed from Joshua and for Joshua to be clothed with fine clothing; a clean turban and clean garments. [3:4-5]

Q? What did Yahweh promise Joshua, the high priest, if he would walk in Yahweh's ways and keep his commandments?

A. Yahweh promised Joshua that he would govern Yahweh's house and keep Yahweh's courts. Yahweh also promised that he would allow Joshua to come and go before those who stand before Yahweh. [3:7]

Q? What was the servant called that Yahweh himself was going to bring up?

A. That servant was called "the Branch." [3:8]

Q? What was the first part of the message to be engraved on the seven sided stone?

A. The first part of the message was that Yahweh would remove the sin from that land in one day. [3:9]

Q? According to Yahweh when will each man invite his neighbor to relax under his vine and under his fig tree?

A. Yahweh said this would occur “in that day”. [3:10]

Zechariah 4

Q? What did Zechariah see when he was roused?

A. Zechariah saw a gold lampstand with a bowl on top, with seven lamps and two olive trees by the bowl. [4:2-3]

Q? Did Zechariah understand what the things in the vision meant?

A. No, Zechariah told the angel who was talking with him that he did not understand the meaning of those things in the vision. [4:4-5]

Q? What did the the seven lamps mean?

A. The seven lamps are the eyes of Yahweh that roam over the whole earth. [4:7]

Q? What are the two olive branches?

A. The two olive branches are the two sons of oil who stand beside the Lord of the whole earth. [4:11]

Q? What was the word of Yahweh to Zerubbabel about how things were going to get done?

A. The word of Yahweh to Zerubbabel was, “Not by might nor by power, but only by my Spirit.” [4:12]

Q? What will be shouted when Zerubbabel brings out the top stone?

A. “Grace! Grace! to it,” will be shouted out at that time. [4:13]

Q? How will the people know that Yahweh sent Zechariah to them?

A. The people will know when they see the prophecy fulfilled; the hand of Zerubbabel lay the foundation of that house and his hands finish it. [4:15]

Q? What will the people see in the hand of Zerubbabel?

A. The people will see the plumb stone in Zerubbabel's hand. [4:16]

Zechariah 5

Q? How big was the scroll that Zechariah saw?

A. The scroll was twenty cubits long and ten cubits wide. [5:2]

Q? What did the angel say the flying scroll was?

A. The angel said the flying scroll was the curse that goes out over the face of the whole land. [5:3]

Q? Who did the scroll curse?

A. The scroll was a curse to every thief and to everyone who swears a false oath. [5:3]

Q? What did the curse do to the thief and to the one who swears falsely by Yahweh's name?

A. The curse will enter their houses and remain there and consume the timber and stones of their houses. [5:4]

Q? What was in the basket that Zechariah saw and what did the angel say it was?

A. An ephah was in the basket that Zechariah saw, and the angel said the ephah "is their iniquity in the whole land." [5:6]

Q? What did the angel say the woman in the basket was?

A. The angel said of the woman in the basket, "This is Wickedness!" [5:8]

Q? What did the two women, who had wings like a stork's wings, do with the basket?

A. The two women lifted up the basket between earth and heaven. [5:9]

Q? Where were the women taking the basket and for what purpose?

A. The women took the basket to build a temple in Shinar for it, so that when the temple is ready, the basket will be set there on its prepared base. [5:11]

Zechariah 6

Q? What did Zechariah see coming out from between two bronze mountains?

A. Zechariah saw four chariots coming out from between two bronze mountains. [6:1]

Q? What color were the horses of each chariot?

A. The first chariot had red horses, the second had black horses, the third had white horses, and the fourth had spotted gray horses. [6:2-3]

Q? What did the angel say the chariots were?

A. The angel said the chariots were the four winds of heaven. [6:5]

Q? Where had these four chariots been?

A. These four chariots had been standing before the Lord of all the earth. [6:5]

Q? Where were the three chariots with the black, the white and the spotted gray horses going?

A. The chariot with the black horses went out to the north country. The chariot with white horses went out to the west country. The chariot with the spotted gray horses went out to the south country. [6:6]

Q? What was the chariot with the black horses that went out to the north country going to accomplish?

A. That chariot with the black horses was going to appease the angel's spirit concerning the north country. [6:8]

Q? What was Zechariah supposed to do with the offering he collected from Heldai, Tobijah, and Jedaiah?

A. Zechariah was told to take the offering into the house of Josiah, son of Zephaniah. Zechariah was to take the silver and gold, make a crown and set it upon the head of Joshua the son of Jehozadak, the high priest. [6:10-11]

Q? What did Yahweh of hosts say Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest, would do?

A. Yahweh said Joshua would grow up where he is and build the temple of Yahweh, raise up its splendor, and then sit and rule on his throne. [6:12-13]

Q? Why was a crown to be placed in the temple of Yahweh?

A. A crown was to be placed in the temple of Yahweh to Heldai, Tobijah, and Jedaiah and as a memorial to the generosity of the son of Zephaniah. [6:14]

Q? What must the people do for these prophetic events to come true?

A. Yahweh said these events would happen “if you truly listen to the voice of Yahweh your God!” [6:15]

Zechariah 7

Q? Why did the people of Bethel send Sharezer, Regem Melech, and their men?

A. The people of Bethel sent them to beg for Yahweh's favor. [7:2]

Q? What did Sharezer, Melech, and their men ask the priest and the prophets?

A. They asked, "Should I mourn in the fifth month by means of a fast, as I have done these many years?" [7:3]

Q? What two questions did Yahweh ask the people of the land and the priests through Zechariah concerning fasting, eating and drinking?

A. The first question Yahweh asked was, "When you fasted and mourned in the fifth and seventh month for these seventy years, were you truly fasting for me?" The second question was, "And when you ate and drank, did you not eat and drink for yourselves?" [7:5-6]

Q? Briefly, what was the last question Yahweh asked the priests and people of the land?

A. In brief, Yahweh asked if these were not the same words Yahweh told the people while they still inhabited Jerusalem, the surrounding cities, the Negev, and the western foothills. [7:7]

Q? What did Yahweh through Zechariah tell the people to do?

A. Yahweh said to judge with true justice, covenant faithfulness, and mercy. He said not to oppress the widow, the orphan, the foreigner or the poor person and not to do evil to one another. [7:8-10]

Q? What was the response of the people to Yahweh's instructions?

A. The people refused to pay attention to Yahweh's words. [7:11]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do when those who formerly refused to listen to Yahweh called out to him?

A. Yahweh said he would not listen to them and, furthermore, he would scatter those people with a whirlwind to all the nations they had not seen. [7:13-14]

Zechariah 8

Q? How does Yahweh express his passion for Zion?

A. Yahweh expresses his passion for Zion with great zeal and great anger. [8:2]

Q? What will Jerusalem and the mountain of Yahweh be called when Yahweh returns to live in the midst of Jerusalem?

A. Jerusalem will be called “The City of Truth” and the mountain of Yahweh will be called “The Holy Mountain” when Yahweh returns to live in the midst of Jerusalem. [8:3]

Q? Who will again be found in the streets of Jerusalem?

A. Old men and old women will be in the streets, and the streets will be full of boys and girls playing in them. [8:4-5]

Q? Where was Yahweh going to rescue his people from?

A. Yahweh was going to rescue his people from the land of the sunrise and from the land of the setting sun. [8:7]

Q? Why did Yahweh want the people to strengthen their hands?

A. Yahweh wanted the people to strengthen their hands so the temple could be rebuilt. [8:9]

Q? What happened before those days when the foundation of Yahweh’s house was laid?

A. In those days, no crops were gathered in, there was no profit, and there was no peace from enemies. Yahweh set every person each against his neighbor. [8:10]

Q? How did Yahweh say it would be during Zechariah's time?

A. Yahweh said it would not be as in former days. He said seeds of peace would be sown. The climbing vine would give its fruit, and the earth would give its produce. The skies would give their dew. Yahweh would make the remnant of that people inherit all those things. [8:11-12]

Q? How does Yahweh command the people to behave and why?

A. Yahweh said the people must all speak truth with his neighbor, and judge with truth, justice, and peace in their gates. He said let no one plot evil in their heart against their neighbor nor be attracted to false oaths. Yahweh commanded these things because they were things he hates. [8:16-17]

Q? In light of the fact that the fasts of the fourth, fifth, seventh and tenth months were going to be times of joy, gladness and happy festivals for the house of Judah, what were they told to do by Yahweh?

A. They were told to love truth and peace. [8:19]

Q? Who did Yahweh say would come to seek him and beg his favor?

A. Yahweh said many people from many different cities and mighty nations would come to seek Yahweh and beg his favor. [8:20-22]

Q? In those days, why will ten men from every language and nation ask to go up to Jerusalem with Yahweh's people?

A. They will ask to go up to Jerusalem with Yahweh's people for they will have heard that God is with them. [8:23]

Zechariah 9

Q? What does Yahweh's declaration concern?

A. Yahweh's declaration concerns the land of Hadrach and Damascus, Hamath, and Tyre and Sidon. [9:1-2]

Q? What does Yahweh say the Lord will do to Tyre?

A. Yahweh says, "The Lord will dispossess her and destroy her strength on the sea, so she will be devoured by fire. [9:4]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to the Philistines and what would become of them?

A. Yahweh said he would cut off the pride of the Philistines. Yahweh also said they would become a remnant for God like a clan in Judah. [9:6-7]

Q? What is one reason Yahweh gives for camping around his land?

A. Yahweh said he would camp around his land against enemy armies so no one could pass through or return, for he said no oppressor would pass through it any more. [9:8]

Q? Why is the daughter of Zion told to shout with great joy and the daughter of Jerusalem told to shout with happiness?

A. They are told to do this because their king is coming to them with righteousness and is going to rescue them. [9:9]

Q? How will their king come to them?

A. Their king will be humble and will ride on a donkey, on the colt of a donkey. [9:9]

Q? What will this king speak to the nations?

A. That king will speak peace to the nations. [9:10]

Q? What will be the extent of that king's dominion?

A. That king's dominion will be from sea to sea, and from the river to the ends of the earth. [9:10]

Q? Why has Yahweh set free their prisoners from the pit where there is no water?

A. Yahweh says he has done this because of the blood of his covenant with them. [9:11]

Q? Against whom has Yahweh roused the sons of Zion?

A. Yahweh has roused the sons of Zion against the sons of Greece. [9:13]

Q? What has Yahweh made Zion like?

A. Yahweh has made Zion like a warrior's sword. [9:13]

Q? What will Zion be on that day when Yahweh, their God, rescues them?

A. On that day, Zion will be the jewels of a crown raised up over Yahweh's land. [9:16]

Zechariah 10

Q? What will Yahweh do for Zion?

A. Yahweh will provide rain showers for Zion when they ask him, and plants in the field. [10:1]

Q? What causes the people to wander like sheep and suffer?

A. The people wander like sheep and suffer because the household idols speak falsely, the diviners envision a lie, they tell empty dreams and give empty comfort. The people also have no shepherd. [10:2]

Q? Who did Yahweh say he would punish?

A. Yahweh said he would punish the male goats – the leaders. [10:3]

Q? What did Yahweh say would come from the house of Judah?

A. Yahweh said the cornerstone, the tent peg, the war bow, and every leader would come from the house of Judah. [10:4]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do for the houses of Judah and Joseph?

A. Yahweh said he would strengthen the house of Judah and save the house of Joseph. Yahweh said he would restore them, have mercy on them. [10:6]

Q? What will Judah and Ephraim do when they remember Yahweh in the distant countries where Yahweh has sown them?

A. They and their children will live and return when they remember Yahweh in the distant countries where he has sown them. [10:9]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to Egypt and Assyria after he gathers those of the house of Judah from those places?

A. Yahweh said he would bring down the majesty of Assyria and make the scepter of Egypt go away from the Egyptians. [10:11]

Zechariah 11

Q? Why do the shepherds howl?

A. The shepherds howl because their glory has been destroyed. [11:3]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Zechariah to do?

A. Yahweh told Zechariah to, “Shepherd the flock meant for slaughter!” [11:4]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to the inhabitants of Judah?

A. Yahweh said he would no longer pity them but cause each man to fall into his shepherd’s hands and into his king’s hands, and they would crush the land. [11:6]

Q? What were the names of the two staffs that Zechariah used to shepherd the flock meant for the slaughter?

A. The names of the two staffs were “Favor” and “Unity.” [11:7]

Q? Why did Zechariah destroy three shepherds in one month?

A. Zechariah did this because he grew weary with the shepherds and they also hated him. [11:8]

Q? Why did Zechariah break his staff, “Favor”?

A. He broke it to break the covenant that he had made with all his tribes. [11:10]

Q? How much was Zechariah paid?

A. Zechariah was paid thirty pieces of silver. [11:12]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Zechariah to do with his thirty pieces of silver?

A. Zechariah was told to deposit the silver in the treasury. [11:13]

Q? What did breaking the second staff, “Unity,” do?

A. Breaking the second staff broke the brotherhood between Judah and Israel. [11:14]

Q? Yahweh said he would raise up a shepherd in the land. What will that shepherd do?

A. That shepherd will not care for the sheep. He will not seek the sheep who have gone astray, nor heal the crippled sheep. He will not feed the steadfast sheep, but will eat the fattened sheep and tear off their hooves. [11:16]

Q? What curse is pronounced upon the worthless shepherd who forsakes the flock?

A. This is the curse: “May the sword come against his right arm and his right eye! May his right arm wither away and his right eye be blind!” [11:17]

Zechariah 12

Q? Who is Yahweh who makes this declaration concerning Israel?

A. Yahweh is the one who stretched out the skies and laid the foundation of the earth, who fashions the spirit of mankind within him. [12:1]

Q? Who is going to gather against Jerusalem?

A. All the nations of the earth are going to gather against Jerusalem.. [12:3]

Q? On the day when all the nations gather against Judah, what specific things did Yahweh say he would do to the horses and riders of the enemy armies?

A. Yahweh said he would strike every horse with terror and each rider with madness. Yahweh also said he would strike every horse of the armies blind. [12:4]

Q? In that day, what will the leaders of Judah be like?

A. In that day, the leaders will be like fire pots among wood and like a flaming torch to standing grain. [12:6]

Q? Why will Yahweh save the tents of Judah first?

A. Yahweh will save the tents of Judah first so that the honor of the house of David and the honor of those who live in Jerusalem may not be greater than the rest of Judah. [12:7]

Q? What is Yahweh determined to do on that day?

A. Yahweh said that on that day he is determined to destroy all the nations who come against Jerusalem. [12:9]

Q? On that day, what will Yahweh pour out on the house of David and the inhabitants of Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh will pour out a spirit of compassion and supplication. [12:10]

Q? What will the house of David and the inhabitants of Jerusalem do when they look upon him whom they have pierced?

A. When they look on him whom they have pierced, they will lament and mourn for him as one mourns and laments for an only son or over the death of a firstborn son. [12:10]

Q? How will the land mourn in that day?

A. In that day, each family will mourn separately from other families and in each family they will mourn separately, their wives will be separate from the men. [12:12-14]

Zechariah 13

Q? For what will the spring be that is opened for the house of David on that day?

A. The spring will be for their sin and impurity. [13:1]

Q? What will Yahweh cut off from the land and why?

A. Yahweh will cut off the names of idols from the land so they will no longer be remembered. [13:2]

Q? What will Yahweh cause to pass out of the land?

A. Yahweh will cause the false prophets and their unclean spirits to pass out of the land. [13:2]

Q? If any man continues to prophesy, what will his father and mother do to him?

A. His father and mother who bore him will impale him when he prophesies. [13:3]

Q? In that day, why will he who prophesies no longer wear a hairy cloak?

A. He who prophesies will no longer wear a hairy cloak so that he might deceive the people. [13:4]

Q? Who is the shepherd?

A. The shepherd is “the man who stands close to me.” [13:7]

Q? What will happen to the flock when the shepherd is killed?

A. When the shepherd is killed the flock will scatter. [13:7]

Q? What does Yahweh declare will happen throughout all the land?

A. Yahweh declares that two portions of it will be cut off. They will perish; only a third will remain there. [13:8]

Q? What will happen to the third that remain there?

A. The third that remain there will be brought through the fire, refined and tested. [13:9]

Q? What will the third that remain there say?

A. The third that remain there will say, "Yahweh is my God!" [13:9]

Zechariah 14

Q? Why will Jerusalem's plunder be divided in their midst?

A. Jerusalem's plunder will be divided in their midst because Yahweh will gather every nation against Jerusalem for battle, and the city will be captured. The houses will be plundered. [14:2]

Q? What will happen to the nations that fought against Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh will go out and wage war against those nations as when he wages war on the day of battle. [14:3]

Q? What will happen to the Mount of Olives when Yahweh stands on it?

A. The Mount of Olives will be split in half with a very great valley between the two halves. [14:4]

Q? When will Yahweh and the holy ones come?

A. Yahweh and the holy ones will come after the inhabitants of Jerusalem flee down the valley between Yahweh's mountains. [14:5]

Q? Where will the running water go that flows from Jerusalem?

A. Half of the water will go to the eastern sea, and half will flow toward the western sea. [14:8]

Q? Who will be king over all the earth?

A. Yahweh will be king over all the earth. [14:9]

Q? Will God destroy Jerusalem?

A. There will be no more destruction from God against them; Jerusalem will live in safety. [14:11]

Q? With what plague will Yahweh attack all the peoples that waged war against Jerusalem?

A. The flesh, eyes, and tongues of all the people that waged war against Jerusalem will rot. [14:12]

Q? What will happen when that great fear from Yahweh comes among them?

A. Each man will seize his neighbor's hand; each hand will be raised against its neighbor's hand. [14:13]

Q? What will all who remain in those nations that came against Jerusalem do?

A. All those who remain in those nations will go up from year to year to worship the king, Yahweh of hosts, and to keep the Festival of Shelters. [14:16]

Q? What will happen if anyone from all the nations of the earth does not go up to Jerusalem to worship the king, Yahweh of hosts?

A. If anyone does not go up to Jerusalem, Yahweh will not bring rain on them. A plague from Yahweh will attack the nations that do not go up to keep the Festival of Shelters. [14:17-18]

Q? On that day who will no longer be in the house of Yahweh of hosts?

A. On that day traders will no longer be in the house of Yahweh of hosts. [14:21]

translationWords

twelve tribes of Israel

Definition:

The term, “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes are slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include: lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by, “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “is an abomination to” could include: “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as, “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [Daniel](#), [desecrate](#), [desolate](#), [desolation](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

accuse, accusation, accuser

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

Waiting

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as, “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [Red Sea](#), [Sea of Reeds](#), [Jordan River](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ashdod, Azotus

Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist, Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Joppa](#), [Philip, the evangelist](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

Ashkelon

Facts:

In Bible times, Ashkelon was a major Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It still exists in Israel today.

- Ashkelon was one of the five most important Philistine cities, along with Ashdod, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The Israelites did not completely conquer the people of Ashkelon, even though the kingdom of Judah occupied its hill country.
- Ashkelon remained occupied by the Philistines for hundreds of years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Philistines](#), [thesea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-02]** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-03]** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **[20-04]** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Babylon, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Chaldean](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **[20-11]** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [oak](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

beg, beggar

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-04]** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **[29-08]** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.’”
- **[32-07]** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **[32-10]** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **[35-11]** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

Benjamin

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called “Luz.”

- After receiving God’s promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as “Bethel” which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name “Bethel” until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as “Luz (later called Bethel)” in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [altar Jacob](#), [Israel Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

biblical time: day

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judgment day](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

biblical time: year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [biblical time: month](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ble**ss**, ble**ss**ed, ble**ss**ing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

bow and arrow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer’s antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term “arrow” is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

Waiting

bronze**Definition:**

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray, prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

camel**Definition:**

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food, but not the Israelites because God had said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

captive, captivity**Definition:**

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cedar

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chariot

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [anoint](#), [anointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **[17-08]** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

- [21-01] From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- [21-05] The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- [21-06] God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- [43-07] "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, "You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave."
- [43-09] "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- [46-06] Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: [family](#), [Jethro](#), [Reuel](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

comfort, comforter

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

Waiting

consume

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See: [devour](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cornerstone

Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

Bible References:

Waiting

courtyard, court

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable to do and say what has been promised and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [grace](#), [gracious](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

CROSS**Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[40-01]** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **[40-02]** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **[40-05]** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **[49-10]** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **[49-12]** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

crown, to crown**Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

curse, cursed

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- [02-11] “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- [04-04] “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- [39-07] Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- [50-16] Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

cut off**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

Waiting

cypress

Definition:

The term “cypress” refers to a kind of fir tree that was plentiful in the regions where people lived in Bible times, especially countries bordering the Mediterranean Sea.

- Cyprus and Lebanon are two places that are specifically mentioned in the Bible as having many cypress trees.
- The wood that Noah used to build the ark may have been cypress.
- Because cypress wood is sturdy and long-lasting, it was used by ancient peoples for building boats and other structures.

(See also: [ark](#), [Cyprus](#), [fir](#), [Lebanon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future. more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [believer](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Darius

Facts:

Darius was the name of several kings of Persia. It is possible that “Darius” was a title rather than a name.

- “Darius the Mede” was the king who was tricked into having the prophet Daniel thrown into a lion’s den as punishment for worshiping God.
- “Darius the Persian” helped facilitate the reconstruction of the temple in Jerusalem during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Persia](#), [Persians](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [Ezra](#), [Nehemiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection, is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include, “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: [biblical time: day, judgment day, Lord, resurrection, Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

declare, declaration

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

decree

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as, "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [declare](#), [declaration](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

desolate, desolation

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [devastate](#), [devastation](#), [ruin](#), [ruins](#), [waste](#), [wasteland](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

devour**Definition:**

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: other)

Bible References:

Waiting

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer**Definition:**

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [sorcery](#), [sorcerer](#), [witchcraft](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other Ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as, “rule over” or “manage.”

(See: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **[08-07]** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **[16-11]** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **[23-01]** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Ekron

Facts:

Ekron was a major city of the Philistines, located nine miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea.

- A temple of the false god Baal-zebub was located at Ekron.
- When the Philistines captured the ark of the covenant, they took it to Ashdod, then moved it to Gath and Ekron because God kept causing people to get sick and die in whatever city the ark was taken to. Finally the Philistines sent the ark back to Israel.
- When King Ahaziah fell through the roof of his house and injured himself, he sinned by trying to find out from the false god Baal-zebub of Ekron as to whether or not he would die from his injuries. Because of this sin, Yahweh said that he would die.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Beelzebul](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [Gath](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ephraim

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exile, the Exile

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as, “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include, “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fast

Definition:

The term “to fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb “to fast” can also be translated as “to refrain from eating” or “to not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-01]** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **[34-08]**”For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **[46-10]** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

festival

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fig**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow to be as tall as 6 meters high and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

Waiting

fire

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born. Usually the firstborn

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “firstborn” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [son](#), [son of](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: *goat, kid, ox, oxen, pig, swine, pork, sheep, ram, ewe,*)

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly**Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forsake, forsaken, forsook**Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

Waiting

foundation, founded**Definition:**

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fruit, fruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gate, gate bar

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Gaza

Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Philip, the evangelist](#), [Philistines](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#), [Gath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gilead

Definition:

Gilead is the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river, where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region is also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

goat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
 - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
 - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
 - A sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from the herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of their tendency to wander away from the one taking care of them.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second live goat and send it into the desert as a symbol of the animal bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [herd](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

grain

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- The heads of grain are the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Greece

Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, Aegean Sea, and Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Phillipi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called “Greeks” and their language is “Greek.” People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term “Greek” is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Corinth](#), [Corinthians](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [Hellenistic](#), [Hebrew](#), [Phillipi](#), [Thessalonica](#), [Thessalonians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

heal, cure

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-14]** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **[21-10]** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **[26-06]** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **[26-08]** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **[32-14]** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **[44-03]** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **[49-02]**] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

high priest

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiaphas’ father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term “chief priest.”

(See also: [Annas](#), [Caiaphas](#), [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-08]** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **[21-07]** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **[38-03]** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **[39-01]** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **[39-03]** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **[44-07]** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **[45-02]** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **[46-01]** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.

- **[48-06]** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

hoof, hoofed, hooves

Facts:

These terms refer to the hard material covering the bottom of the feet of certain animals such as camels, cattle, deer, horses, donkeys, pigs, oxen, sheep, and goats.

- An animal's hooves protect its feet when walking.
- Some animals have hooves that are split into two parts and others do not.
- God told the Israelites that animals which had split hooves and chewed a cud were considered clean to eat. This included cattle, sheep, deer, and oxen.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [camel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [donkey](#), [mule](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hope

Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

horse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house of David

Facts:

The expression “house of David” refers to the family or descendants of King David.

- This could also be translated as, “descendants of David” or “family of David” or “King David’s clan.”
- Because Jesus was descended from David, he was part of the “house of David.”
- Sometimes “house of David” or “household of David” refers to the people in David’s family who were still living.
- Other times this term is more general and refers to all his descendants, including those who had already died.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

humble, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [34-10] ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
 - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
 - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
 - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include, “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as, “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#), [covet](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jebusites, Jebus

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, whose name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Ham](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Melchizedek](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Jordan River

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on the west from Jordan on the east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. Because it was too deep, God miraculously stopped the water from flowing so they could go across.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Genesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-02]** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **[19-14]** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-04]** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **[08-07]** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **[08-09]** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **[09-02]** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned different parts of the land for each of the tribes of Israel to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-04]** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **[14-08]** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **[14-14]** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **[14-15]** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: **rejoice**)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-09]** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **[18-13]** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **[50-17]** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah, kingdom](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-07]** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-13]** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **[20-05]** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.

- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lament, lamentation**Definition:**

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to lament” could be translated as, “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

Waiting

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- Ordinary oil lamps were usually made out of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval-shaped, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as, “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as, “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will be an unknown length of time.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as, “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was also thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#), [fir](#), [Phoenicia](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Levite, Levi

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple, Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lion**Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lord, master, sir

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-05]** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **[26-03]** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **[27-02]** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **[31-05]** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **[43-09]** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **[47-03]** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **[47-11]** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” should *not* be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lowly, lowliness

Definition:

The terms “lowly” and “lowliness” refer to being poor or having low status. This term can also have the meaning of being humble.

- Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
- His birth was lowly because he was born in a place where animals were kept, not in a palace.
- Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
- Ways to translate “lowly” could include, “humble” or “of low status” or “unimportant.”
- The word “lowliness” could also be translated as “humility” or “little importance.”

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as, “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

memorial, memorial offering

Definition:

The term “memorial” refers to an action or object that causes someone or something to be remembered.

- This word is also used as an adjective to describe something that is to remind them of something, as in a “memorial offering,” a “memorial portion” of a sacrifice or “memorial stones.”
- In the Old Testament memorial offerings were made so the Israelites would remember what God had done for them.
- God told the Israelite priests to wear special clothing that had memorial stones. These stones had the names of the twelve tribes of Israel engraved on them. These were perhaps to remind them of God’s faithfulness to them.
- In the New Testament, God honored a man named Cornelius because of his charitable deeds for the poor. These deeds were said to be a “memorial” before God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “lasting reminder.”
- A “memorial stone” could be translated as, a “stone to remind them (of something).”

Bible References:

Waiting

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Mount of Olives

Definition:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

- In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as “the mountain that is east of Jerusalem.”
- The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
- Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
- This could also be translated as “Olive Hill” or “Olive Tree Mountain.”

(See: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gethsemane](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nathan

Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived during the time when David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David, in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, “Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me.”
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that this southern region is not the same location as the present day Negev Desert.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and became his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Kadesh-Barnea](#), [Meribah Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

neighbor

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nile River, River of Egypt

Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well-known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water and food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Goshen](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- **[09-04]** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- **[09-06]** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- **[10-03]** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

oak

Definition:

An oak is a tall, shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks for elderly people.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunk of certain oak trees could be as wide around as 6 meters.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will have to say “oak tree” rather than just “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, this could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like...,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oath, swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oil**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit is green in color, changing to black as they ripen. Olives are used for eating and extracting oil.
- Olive oil was used for cooking, for lighting lamps, and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oppress, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

perish, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pit**Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as, “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plead, pleading, plea

Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

Waiting

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as, “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

rebuke

Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent the one who committed the wrong from involving themselves further in sin.
- This could be translated by, “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by, “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as, “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

redeem, redemption, redeemer

Definition:

The terms “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buying back something that was previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full payment for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words, “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may only use one term to translate both these terms.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [ransom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

remnant**Definition:**

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “leftover” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who survived attacks from outsiders and lived to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as, “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

Waiting

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

rest**Definition:**

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include, “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be, “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated by, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”
- In Psalm 105:9, God calls for an accuser to be at the “right hand” of a wicked leader sent to punish his rebellious people. This could be translated as, “appoint an accuser to have the place of honor beside that wicked leader” or “appoint an accuser to help that wicked leader punish them.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

robe

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by both men and women. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short in length.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

The devil is a spirit being that God created, but he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created, because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" can be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-01]** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **[25-06]** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **[25-08]** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **[38-07]** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.

- **[48-04]** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **[49-15]** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **[50-09]** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **[50-10]** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **[50-15]** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-08] Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- [11-02] God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- [12-05] Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- [12-13] The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- [16-17] This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- [44-08] “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- [47-11] The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

scroll

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading it, people rolled it up using rods on the ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. This would prevent anyone else from opening the scroll and writing on it.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: [seal](#), [to seal](#), [synagogue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seize**Definition:**

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” It could also be translated as, “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated as “overcome” or “suddenly come upon.”
- This term could also be translated as, “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression, “seized and slept with her” could be translated as, “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

send, send out, sent**Definition:**

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as “send word” or “send a message” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently uses the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as, “commissioned me” or “caused me to come” or “appointed me to go.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking

Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- To “sleep with” someone is a common way of referring to having sexual relations. The past tense is, “slept with.”
- In the Old Testament book, “Song of Solomon,” the ULB uses the term “lovemaking” to translate the word “love,” which in that context refers to sexual relations. This is related to the expression, “make love to.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions of this term in different contexts, depending on whether it is talking about a husband and wife, or whether it is about some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate “sleep with”: “lie with” or “make love to” or “be intimate with.”
- Other ways to translate “have relations with” could include, “have sexual relations with” or “have marital relations with.”
- The term “lovemaking” could also be translated as, “loving” or “intimacy.” Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See: [sexual immorality](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

shepherd, to shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Shimei

Definition:

Shimei is the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Shimei son of Gera, was a Benjamite who cursed King David and threw stones at him as he was fleeing Jerusalem to escape being killed by his son Absalom.
- There were also several Levite priests in the Old Testament who were named Shimei.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Benjamin](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Shinar

Facts:

Shinar means “country of two rivers” and was the name of a plain or region in southern Mesopotamia.

- Shinar later became known as “Chaldea” and then, “Babylonia.”
- Ancient peoples living in the city of Babel in the Plain of Shinar built a tall tower to try to make themselves great.
- Generations later, the Jewish patriarch Abraham lived in the city of Ur in this region, which by that time was called “Chaldea.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Babel](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Chaldea](#), [Chaldean](#), [Mesopotamia](#), [Aram Naharaim](#), [patriarchs](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The “Sidonians” were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and the immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Noah](#), [Phoenicia](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Tyre](#), [Tyrians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

siege, besiege

Definition:

The term “siege” refers to when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from being able to receive any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city means to cause that city to be under a siege.

- When Babylon came to attack Israel, they used a siege tactic on Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege attack, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- The expression “lay siege” means to perform a siege. It has the same meaning as “besiege.”
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

Waiting

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can be reminders of something that was promised:
 - The rainbow God created in the sky was a sign to remind people that he would never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel told shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles done by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as, “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

slaughter

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

son, son of

Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

sow, sower, plant

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively as in, “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result. And if a person does good to others, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term “sow” could also be translated as “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include, “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words depending on what is being planted.
- The expression, “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as, “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [reap](#), [reaper](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor, referring to their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of the people, including rich clothing, gold and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as, “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [majesty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

staff**Definition:**

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, which was different from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- [44-05] “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- [46-04] God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-06] David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18-02] In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- **[20-13]** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **[25-04]** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **[40-07]** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

test

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tongue

Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression, “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongues” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as, “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as, “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as, “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as, “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribe**Definition:**

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

trumpet

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was also located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the coast.
- Because of its location and valuable natural resources such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers for building a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also gave King Solomon wood and skilled laborers for building the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#), [Sidonians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unclean

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

understand, understanding

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [know](#), [knowledge](#), [make known](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Uzziah, Azariah

Facts:

Uzziah became king of Judah at the age of 16 and reigned 52 years, which was an unusually long reign. Uzziah was also known as “Azariah.”

- King Uzziah was well-known for his organized and skilled military. He had towers built to protect the city and had specially-designed weapons of war mounted on them to hurl arrows and large stones.
- As long as Uzziah served the Lord, he prospered. Toward the end of his reign, however, he became proud and he disobeyed the Lord by burning incense in the temple, which only the priest was permitted to do.
- Because of this sin, Uzziah became sick with leprosy and had to live separately from other people until the end of his reign.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [king](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [reign](#), [watchtower](#), [tower](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means, “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

virgin

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Mary](#), [the mother of Jesus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-09]** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **[22-04]** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **[22-05]** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **[49-01]** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

vision**Facts:**

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

waste, wasteland**Definition:**

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

Waiting

watch, watchman**Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

Waiting

water, waters

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

woe**Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says, “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression, “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “(The people in) that city will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression, “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

Waiting

word**Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, ”The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

worship

Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.””
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrath, fury**Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- [13-04] Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- [13-05] "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host

Definition:

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Lord Yahweh](#), [Yahweh God Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

zeal, zealous**Definition:**

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the temple during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Darius](#), [Ezra](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Nehemiah](#), [Zerubbabel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zephaniah

Facts:

Zephaniah, son of Cushi, was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem and prophesied during the reign of King Josiah. He lived during the same time period as Jeremiah.

- He rebuked the people of Judah for worshipping false gods. His prophecies are written in the book of Zephaniah in the Old Testament.
- There were several other men in the Old Testament named Zephaniah, most of whom were priests.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zerubbabel

Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [Cyrus](#), [Ezra](#), [high priest](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Joshua](#), [Judah](#), [Nehemiah](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#), [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Apostrophe

This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Reason this is a translation issue: Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)**
 - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- ”You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- ”King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- ”a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - “whether we are alive or dead”

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Hendiadys

This answers the question: What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Parts of Speech*

Hendiadys is when a speaker makes a single idea more forceful by connecting two nouns or adjectives with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

Description

Hendiadys is when a speaker expresses a single idea by connecting two words with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

his own *kingdom and glory* (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys has an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Some languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that one word describes the other.

Examples from the Bible

for I will give you *words and wisdom* (Luke 21:15 ULB)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *wise words*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*."

2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *words of wisdom*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*."

3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

- **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
 - "if you are willingly obedient"

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

- **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."
 - "if you obey willingly"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Doublet*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Irony

This answers the question: What is irony and how can I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which a person pretends to say what he really believes, when in fact he is saying what someone else believes, and he does it in a way that shows that other belief is wrong. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief is foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous. He was speaking to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous and who were criticizing him for welcoming sinners. Jesus implied that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will not realize that the speaker is ridiculing the idea.

Examples from the Bible

After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "*Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?*" (Luke 22:64ULB)

The fact that the soldiers were beating Jesus shows us that they did not believe that he was a prophet. They knew that other people thought that Jesus was a prophet, and they may have also thought that Jesus himself claimed to be a prophet. When they told him to prophecy, they were using irony. They were mocking him and implying that if he really was a prophet, then he should be able to tell who hit him without seeing them.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had any knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not even speak, but he did this to mock the idols and rebuke the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
"the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrase above emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many many years later.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here is another strategy.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is *not* found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)
 - "After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "You call yourself a prophet. Then prophesy! Who hit you?"
 - "After blindfolding him, they said to him, "Prophesy! If you were really a prophet, you would be able to tell us who hit you."
- **I did not come to call *righteous people* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
 - "I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance."

2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)

- “After blindfolding him, they said to him, *”You are not a prophet because you cannot even tell us who struck you!”* ”
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)
 - ” ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or even come forward to declare to us what will happen*. We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

***Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!*** (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- ”Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? *You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation!*”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Litotes*

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Biblical Distance

This answers the question: How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

Original Measure	Centimeters	Meters
handbreadth	8 centimeters	.08 meters
span	23 centimeters	.23 meters
cubit	46 centimeters	.46 meters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters	.54 meters
stadia	-	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half kubits*; its width will be *one kubit and a half*; and its height will be *one kubit and a half*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*; its width will be *0.7 meter*; and its height will be *0.7 meter*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *3 3/4 feet*; its width will be *2 1/4 feet*; and its height will be *2 1/4 feet*."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half cubits (one meter)*; its width will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*; and its height will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*¹; its width will be *0.7 meter*²; and its height will be *0.7 meter*." The footnotes would look like:
 - ^[1] one meter two and a half cubits
 - ^[2] one cubit and a half

Biblical Money

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*."² (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1] five hundred days's wages
- ^[2] fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: What are the Hebrew months?

In order to understand this page, it would be good to read

- [Ordinal Numbers](#)

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months they use.
2. Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
3. Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
4. The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile) - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in *the month of Abib*. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day *in the first month of the year*, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of Abib*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in *the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the first month of the year*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."

2. Use the months that people know.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of March*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."
- "It will always be a statute for you that *on the day I choose in late September* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

3. State clearly what season the month occurred.

- "It will always be a statute for you that *in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work"

4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

- "It will always be a statute for you that in *the day I choose in early autumn* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Numbers

This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Ordinal Numbers

This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

- "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*